# Nonscattering solutions and blowup at infinity for the critical wave equation 

Roland Donninger • Joachim Krieger

Received: 23 January 2012 / Revised: 26 November 2012 / Published online: 29 January 2013
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

Abstract We consider the critical focusing wave equation $\left(-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta\right) u+u^{5}=0$ in $\mathbb{R}^{1+3}$ and prove the existence of energy class solutions which are of the form

$$
u(t, x)=t^{\frac{\mu}{2}} W\left(t^{\mu} x\right)+\eta(t, x)
$$

in the forward lightcone $\left\{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3}:|x| \leq t, t \gg 1\right\}$ where $W(x)=(1+$ $\left.\frac{1}{3}|x|^{2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ is the ground state soliton, $\mu$ is an arbitrary prescribed real number (positive or negative) with $|\mu| \ll 1$, and the error $\eta$ satisfies

$$
\left\|\partial_{t} \eta(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{t}\right)}+\|\nabla \eta(t, \cdot)\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{t}\right)} \ll 1, \quad B_{t}:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}:|x|<t\right\}
$$

for all $t \gg 1$. Furthermore, the kinetic energy of $u$ outside the cone is small. Consequently, depending on the sign of $\mu$, we obtain two new types of solutions which either concentrate as $t \rightarrow \infty$ (with a continuum of rates) or stay bounded but do not scatter. In particular, these solutions contradict a strong version of the soliton resolution conjecture.

[^0]
## 1 Introduction

In this paper we study the critical focusing wave equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta\right) u(t, x)+u(t, x)^{5}=0 \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $u: I \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, I \subset \mathbb{R}$ an interval. It is well-known that the Cauchy problem for Eq. (1.1) is well-posed for data in the energy space $\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$, see e.g. [29,43]. Furthermore, Eq. (1.1) admits a static solution $W$, the ground state soliton given by $W(x)=\left(1+\frac{1}{3}|x|^{2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, which indicates the presence of interesting dynamics. Our main result is the following.

Theorem 1.1 There exists an $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ such that for any $\delta>0$ and $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ with $|\mu| \leq \varepsilon_{0}$ there exists a $t_{0} \geq 1$ and an energy class solution $u:\left[t_{0}, \infty\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of Eq. (1.1) of the form

$$
u(t, x)=t^{\frac{\mu}{2}} W\left(t^{\mu} x\right)+\eta(t, x), \quad|x| \leq t, t \geq t_{0}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t} u(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t}\right)}+\|\nabla u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t}\right)} & \leq \delta, \\
\left\|\partial_{t} \eta(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{t}\right)}+\|\nabla \eta(t, \cdot)\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{t}\right)} & \leq \delta
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}$ where $B_{t}:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}:|x|<t\right\}$.
The Cauchy problem for Eq. (1.1) has attracted a lot of interest in the recent past and we briefly review the most important contributions. Equation (1.1) is invariant under the scaling transformation

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t, x) \mapsto u^{\lambda}(t, x):=\lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} u(\lambda t, \lambda x), \quad \lambda>0 \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and its conserved energy

$$
E\left(u(t, \cdot), u_{t}(t, \cdot)\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left\|\left(u(t, \cdot), u_{t}(t, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2}-\frac{1}{6}\|u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{6}
$$

satisfies $E\left(u^{\lambda}(t / \lambda, \cdot), u_{t}^{\lambda}(t / \lambda, \cdot)\right)=E\left(u(t, \cdot), u_{t}(t, \cdot)\right)$ which is why Eq. (1.1) is called energy critical. Historically, the investigation of the global Cauchy problem for energy critical wave equations started with the defocusing case,

$$
\left(-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta\right) u(t, x)-u(t, x)^{5}=0
$$

where the sign of the nonlinearity is reversed compared to Eq. (1.1). After the pioneering works $[37,39]$, the development culminated in a proof of global existence and scattering for arbitrary data $[2,16,17,20,40,41,44]$, see also [47]. However, the
dynamics in the focusing case are much more complicated. For instance, it is wellknown that there exist solutions with compactly supported smooth initial data which blow up in finite time. This is most easily seen by observing that

$$
u(t, x)=\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}}(1-t)^{-\frac{1}{2}}
$$

is an explicit solution which, by finite speed of propagation, can be used to construct a blowup solution of the aforementioned type. This kind of breakdown is referred to as ODE blowup and it is conjectured to comprise the "generic" blowup scenario [4]. We remark in passing that (parts of) this conjecture have been proved for the subcritical case

$$
\left(-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta\right) u+u|u|^{p-1}=0, \quad p \in(1,3],
$$

see $[7,33,34]$, but for $p>3$ the problem is largely open (see, however, [6]). Another (less explicit but classical) argument to obtain finite time blowup for focusing wave equations is due to Levine [28]. Recently, Krieger et al. [27] constructed in the energy critical case $p=5$ more "exotic" blowup solutions of the form ${ }^{1}$

$$
u(t, x)=(1-t)^{-\frac{1}{2}(1+v)} W\left((1-t)^{-1-v} x\right)+\eta(t, x), \quad|x| \leq 1-t
$$

where $v>\frac{1}{2}$ can be prescribed arbitrarily and $\eta$ is small in a suitable sense. As a matter of fact, the proof of Theorem 1.1 makes extensive use of the techniques developed in [27], see also [23,24] for analogous results in the case of critical wave maps and Yang-Mills equations. In this respect we also mention another construction of blowup solutions for the critical wave equation by Hillairet and Raphaël [18], albeit for the higher dimensional case $\mathbb{R}^{1+4}$. Furthermore, Duyckaerts et al. [9,10] showed that any type II blowup solution ${ }^{2}$ which satisfies a suitable smallness condition decomposes into a rescaled ground state soliton plus a small remainder.

Apart from the construction of blowup solutions, it is of interest to obtain conditions on the initial data under which the solution exists globally. As a consequence of Strichartz estimates it is relatively easy to establish global existence and scattering for data with small energy, see [37,43]. However, for energies close to the ground state the situation becomes much more involved. Krieger and Schlag [22] proved the existence of a small codimension one manifold in the space of initial data, containing $(W, 0)$, which leads to solutions of the form

$$
u(t, x)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) x)+\eta(t, x)
$$

where $\lambda(t) \rightarrow a>0$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$ and $\eta$ scatters like a free wave. In other words, the solutions arising from data on this manifold exist globally and scatter to a rescaling

[^1]of the ground state soliton, see also [45] for numerical work in this direction. A different line of investigation was pursued by Kenig and Merle [21] who established the following celebrated dichotomy.

Theorem 1.2 (Kenig-Merle [21]) Let u be an energy class solution to Eq. (1.1) with

$$
E\left(u(0, \cdot), u_{t}(0, \cdot)\right)<E(W, 0)
$$

- If $\|u(0, \cdot)\|_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}<\|W\|_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ then the solution $u(t, x)$ exists for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and scatters like a free wave as $t \rightarrow \pm \infty$.
- If $\|u(0, \cdot)\|_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}>\|W\|_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ then the solution $u(t, x)$ blows up in finite time in both temporal directions.

Theorem 1.2 was extended by Duyckaerts and Merle [13] to include the case $E\left(u(0, \cdot), u_{t}(0, \cdot)\right)=E(W, 0)$ which, in addition to the possibilities of Theorem 1.2, entails solutions which scatter towards (a rescaling of) $W$. We also refer the reader to the recent works by Krieger et al. [25,26] where they consider data with energies slightly above the ground state. Based on the results in [13,21,22,27] it seemed plausible to expect a strong version of the soliton resolution conjecture to hold. Roughly speaking, this conjecture states that the long time evolution splits into a finite sum of solitons plus radiation, see [42].

Conjecture 1.3 (Strong soliton resolution at energies close to the ground state) Any radial energy class solution of Eq. (1.1) with energy close to $E(W, 0)$ either blows up in finite time or scatters to zero like a free wave or scatters towards a rescaling of $W$.

Our Theorem 1.1, however, shows that Conjecture 1.3 is wrong. In addition to the already known dynamics

- $\lambda(t) \rightarrow \infty$ as $t \rightarrow 1$ (exotic blowup [27])
- $\lambda(t) \rightarrow a>0$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$ (scattering towards (a rescaling of) $W$ [13,22])
for solutions of the form $u(t, x)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) x)+\eta(t, x)$ with $\eta$ small, our result adds the two new possibilities
- $\lambda(t) \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$ ("vanishing")
- $\lambda(t) \rightarrow \infty$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$ ("blowup at infinity")
and either of which contradicts Conjecture 1.3. Furthermore, there exists a continuum of rates at which the blowup (or vanishing) occurs. It has to be remarked that the blowup does not take place in the energy norm (which stays bounded) but in a type II fashion (i.e., only higher order norms blow up). We also note that, although Conjecture 1.3 in this sharp form does not hold, a weaker version in the radial context was proved after the submission of the present paper [11]. The result in [11] shows in particular that the solutions we construct are in a sense the only global solutions which do not scatter. We also remark in passing that we expect the solutions of Theorem 1.1 to be smooth and therefore, unlike in the case of the exotic blowup in [27], there is no conjectured "quantization" of blowup rates as one passes to smooth solutions. The intuitive reason for this is that we do not encounter a singularity at the lightcone as in [27] since we cut off our approximate solutions in such a way that they are supported inside the
smaller cone $r \leq t-c$ for some constant $c$. At the moment, however, we cannot rigorously prove the smoothness of the full solutions since parts of our construction rely on a "soft" argument which only yields energy class regularity. Furthermore, it is worth mentioning that the technique used to prove Theorem 1.1 appears to have much wider applicability for similar critical nonlinear problems, as did the construction in [27]. We also note that the restrictions on $\mu$ in our Theorem 1.1 seem to be in part technical and nonessential. Thus, it appears to be natural to expect at least the range $-1<\mu<\varepsilon_{0}$ to be allowable, for suitable $\varepsilon_{0}>0$.

While this paper was being written up, T. Duyckaerts informed the authors of the following result, obtained jointly with C. Kenig and F. Merle, which nicely combines with our Theorem 1.1 in a similar way as $[9,10]$ are related to [27].

Theorem 1.4 (Duyckaerts-Kenig-Merle [12], private communication by T. Duyckaerts) If $u:[0, \infty) \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a radial energy class solution of $E q$. (1.1) with

$$
\limsup _{t \rightarrow \infty}\left(\left\|\partial_{t} u(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\|\nabla u(t, \cdot)\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\right)<2\|\nabla W\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

then (up to a change of sign)

$$
\begin{aligned}
u(t, x) & =\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) x)+v(t, x)+o_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}(1) \\
\partial_{t} u(t, x) & =\partial_{t} v(t, x)+o_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}(1)
\end{aligned}
$$

with $v$ a free wave and $t \lambda(t) \rightarrow \infty$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$.
Theorem 1.1 should also be contrasted to previous works on other dispersive systems such as the nonlinear Schrödinger equation. We cannot do justice to the vast literature on this subject but as an example we mention Tao's result [46] on the cubic focusing Schrödinger equation in $\mathbb{R}^{1+3}$ which states that radial solutions which exist globally decouple into a smooth function localized near the origin, a radiative term, and an error that goes to zero as $t \rightarrow \infty$. Unlike Theorem 1.1, this result is in concordance with the soliton resolution conjecture. We refer the reader to [42] and the references therein for more positive results in this direction. Furthermore, the only system (to our knowledge) of "wave type" (i.e., either nonlinear wave or Schrödinger equation) for which nonscattering solutions similar to ours are known is the $L^{2}$-critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation in $\mathbb{R}^{1+1}$. For this system nonscattering solutions can be constructed by combining the "log log" blowup of [38] with the pseudo-conformal symmetry (the "log log" blowup exists in other dimensions as well, see [30-32]). However, it is evident that the mechanism which furnishes these solutions is completely different and not related to the situation here.

### 1.1 A roadmap of the proof

We give a brief overview of the proof of Theorem 1.1 without going into technical details. As already mentioned, the construction is in parts based on the techniques developed in [23,24,27]. However, in order to deal with the present situation, the
method has to be modified and extended considerably. In the following we restrict ourselves to radial functions and the symbols $r$ and $|x|$ are used interchangeably. By a slight abuse of notation we also write $u(t, r)$ instead of $u(t, x)$ meaning that $u(t, \cdot)$ is a radial function. Furthermore, throughout this paper we $\operatorname{set}^{3} \lambda(t):=t^{-(1-\nu)}$ where $v$ is assumed to be close to 1 . Roughly speaking, the proof splits into three main parts which we now describe in more detail.
(1) Construction of "elliptic profile modifiers". An obvious idea is to insert the naive ansatz $u(t, r)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)+\eta(t, r)$ into Eq. (1.1) and to derive an equation for $\eta$. By doing so, however, one produces an error $\partial_{t}^{2}\left[\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)\right]$ which decays roughly like $t^{-2}$ and this turns out to be insufficient. Consequently, we first modify the profile $\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)$ by a nonperturbative procedure. This is done in two steps where we solve suitable (linear) approximations to Eq. (1.1) and thereby improve the error at the center and, in the second step, near the lightcone $r \approx t$. This does not yield an actual solution but a function $u_{2}$ which solves Eq. (1.1) only up to an error. However, this error now decays approximately like $t^{-4}$ and thus, we have gained two powers which is sufficient to proceed. This is in contrast to the analogous procedure in [27] where a very large number of modifications are added to the ground state. In our situation, it turns out that additional modifications do not improve the error further. The improvement in decay comes at the expense of differentiability at the lightcone which has to be accounted for by using suitable cut-offs. Thus, in this first stage of the construction, we only obtain an approximate solution in a smaller forward light cone (i.e., of the form $|x| \leq t-c$ and hence strictly contained inside the standard light cone $|x| \leq t$ ), in contrast to the procedure in [27].
(2) In a second step we insert the ansatz $u=u_{2}+\varepsilon$ into Eq. (1.1) and derive an equation for $\varepsilon$ which is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta\right) \varepsilon+5 W_{\lambda(t)}^{4} \varepsilon=\text { nonlinear terms }+ \text { error } \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $W_{\lambda}(x):=\lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda x)$. Due to the aforementioned lack of smoothness, the right-hand side of the equation is only defined in a forward lightcone and for the moment we restrict ourselves to this region. In order to obtain a time-independent potential on the left-hand side we use $R:=\lambda(t) r$ as a spatial coordinate and, with an appropriate new time coordinate $\tau$, Eq. (1.3) transforms into

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}^{2} \varepsilon+c \tau^{-1} \mathcal{D} \varepsilon+(-\Delta+V) \varepsilon=\text { nonlinear terms }+ \text { error } \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{D}$ is a first order transport-type operator and $V=-5 W^{4}$. In order to solve Eq. (1.4) we apply the "distorted Fourier transform" relative to the self-adjoint operator $-\Delta+V$. This requires a careful spectral analysis which is only feasible since we are in the radial case. The existence of a zero energy resonance plays a prominent role here. As a result we obtain a transport-type equation for the Fourier

[^2]coefficients which is then solved by the method of characteristics combined with a fixed point argument. The treatment of the error terms on the right-hand side of the transport equation is delicate and requires a good amount of harmonic analysis. In particular, the functional framework employed differs from that in [27].
(3) The last step consists of a partially "soft" argument which is used to extend the solution to the whole space and, second, to extract suitable initial data that lead to the desired solution (recall that we have solved the equation in a forward lightcone where the Cauchy problem is not well-posed). For this we rely on a concentration-compactness approach based on the celebrated Bahouri-Gérard decomposition [1].

### 1.2 Notation

We write $\mathbb{N}$ for the natural numbers $\{1,2,3, \ldots\}$ and set $\mathbb{N}_{0}:=\{0\} \cup \mathbb{N}$. We use standard Lebesgue and (fractional) Sobolev spaces denoted by $L^{p}(\Omega), W^{s, p}(\Omega)$ and $H^{s}:=W^{s, 2}$ with $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^{d}$. Our sign convention for the wave operator is $\square:=-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta$. Unless otherwise stated, the letter $C$ (possibly with indices) denotes a positive constant which may change from line to line. As usual, we write $a \lesssim b$ if $a \leq C b$ and if the constant $C$ has to be sufficiently large, we indicate this by $a \ll b$. Similarly, we use $a \gtrsim b$ and $a \simeq b$ means $a \lesssim b$ and $b \lesssim a$. Furthermore, we reiterate that $\lambda(t):=t^{-(1-v)}$ with $v$ a real number close to 1 . Throughout the paper, $v$ is supposed to be fixed and sufficiently close to 1 . Note also that Theorem 1.1 is trivial if $v=1$ since in this case $u(t, x)=W(x)$. Thus, whenever convenient we exclude the case $v=1$ without further notice. For $x \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ we set $\langle x\rangle:=\sqrt{1+|x|^{2}}$ and write $O(f(x))$ to denote a generic real-valued function which satisfies $|O(f(x))| \lesssim|f(x)|$ in a domain of $x$ that is either specified explicitly or follows from the context. If the function attains complex values as well we indicate this by a subscript, e.g. $O_{\mathbb{C}}(x)$. An $O$-term $O\left(x^{\gamma}\right)$, where $x, \gamma \in \mathbb{R}$, is said to behave like a symbol if $\left|\partial_{x}^{k} O\left(x^{\gamma}\right)\right| \leq C_{k}|x|^{\gamma-k}$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. A similar definition applies to symbol behavior of $O\left(\langle x\rangle^{\gamma}\right)$ with $|\cdot|$ substituted by $\langle\cdot\rangle$.

## 2 Construction of an approximate solution

Our intention is to construct a solution $u$ of the form $u(t, r)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)+\eta(t, r)$ with $\lambda(t)=t^{-(1-v)}$ where $v$ is sufficiently close to 1 and $\eta$ is small in a suitable sense. We first improve the approximate solution $W_{\lambda(t)}(r):=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)$ by successively adding two correction terms $v_{0}$ and $v_{1}$. These corrections are obtained by approximately solving the equation in a way we describe in the following.

### 2.1 Improvement at the center

We set $u_{0}(t, r):=W_{\lambda(t)}(r)$ and define the first error $e_{0}$ by

$$
e_{0}:=\square u_{0}+u_{0}^{5}=-\partial_{t}^{2} u_{0}
$$

with $\square=-\partial_{t}^{2}+\Delta$.

Lemma 2.1 The error $e_{0}$ is of the form

$$
t^{2} e_{0}(t, r)=c_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1}+t^{2} e_{0}^{*}(t, r)
$$

where $c_{\nu}$ is a real constant and $e_{0}^{*}$ satisfies the bounds

$$
\left|\partial_{t}^{\ell} \partial_{r}^{k} t^{2} e_{0}^{*}(t, r)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}+k+\ell}[\lambda(t) t]^{-\ell}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-3-k}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}>0, r \geq 0$ and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. In addition, we have

$$
\left.\partial_{r}^{2 k+1} e_{0}(t, r)\right|_{r=0}=\left.\partial_{r}^{2 k+1} e_{0}^{*}(t, r)\right|_{r=0}=0 .
$$

Proof Note first that $W(R)=\sqrt{3}\langle R\rangle^{-1}+W^{*}(R)$ where $\left|\partial_{R}^{k} W^{*}(R)\right| \leq C_{k}\langle R\rangle^{-3-k}$ for all $R \geq 0$ and $k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. Consequently, the claim follows from

$$
e_{0}(t, r)=-\partial_{t}^{2} u_{0}(t, r)=-\partial_{t}^{2}\left[\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)\right]
$$

by the chain rule.
Note that the decay of $e_{0}(t, r)$ near the lightcone $r=t$ is better than at the center. Consequently, we first attempt to improve the approximation near $r=0$. Ideally, we would like to add a correction $v_{0}$ such that $u_{1}:=u_{0}+v_{0}$ becomes an exact solution, i.e.,

$$
0=\square u_{1}+u_{1}^{5}=\square v_{0}+5 u_{0}^{4} v_{0}+N\left(u_{0}, v_{0}\right)+e_{0}
$$

where

$$
N\left(u_{0}, v_{0}\right):=10 u_{0}^{3} v_{0}^{2}+10 u_{0}^{2} v_{0}^{3}+5 u_{0} v_{0}^{4}+v_{0}^{5} .
$$

Near the center $r=0$ we expect the time derivative to be less important and therefore we neglect it altogether and also drop the nonlinearity to obtain the approximate equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta v_{0}+5 u_{0}^{4} v_{0}=-e_{0} \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the next error $e_{1}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{1}:=\square u_{1}+u_{1}^{5} . \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

We solve Eq. (2.1) for $v_{0}$ and subsequently show that $e_{1}$ decays faster than $e_{0}$.
Lemma 2.2 There exists a function $v_{0}$ satisfying Eq. (2.1) such that

$$
v_{0}(t, r)=c_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2} \lambda(t) r+d_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2}+v_{0}^{*}(t, r)
$$

where $c_{\nu}, d_{\nu}$ are real constants and

$$
\left|\partial_{t}^{\ell} \partial_{r}^{k} v_{0}^{*}(t, r)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}+k+\ell}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2-\ell}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1-k}\langle\log \langle\lambda(t) r\rangle\rangle
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}>0, r \geq 0$ and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. As a consequence, the error $e_{1}$ defined by Eq. (2.2) is of the form

$$
t^{2} e_{1}(t, r)=c_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2} \lambda(t) r+d_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2}+t^{2} e_{1}^{*}(t, r)
$$

with (different) real constants $c_{\nu}, d_{v}$ and $e_{1}^{*}$ satisfies the bounds

$$
\left|\partial_{t}^{\ell} \partial_{r}^{k} t^{2} e_{1}^{*}(t, r)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}+k+\ell}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2+\epsilon-\ell}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1-k}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}>0,0 \leq r \lesssim t$, any (fixed) $\epsilon>0$, and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. In addition, we have $\left.\partial_{r}^{2 k+1} w(t, r)\right|_{r=0}=0$ where $w \in\left\{v_{0}, v_{0}^{*}, e_{1}, e_{1}^{*}\right\}$.

Proof Setting $\tilde{v}_{0}(t, R):=R v_{0}\left(t, \lambda(t)^{-1} R\right)$ and $R:=\lambda(t) r$, Eq. (2.1) reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{R}^{2} \tilde{v}_{0}(t, R)+5 W(R)^{4} \tilde{v}_{0}(t, R)=-\lambda(t)^{-2} R e_{0}\left(t, \lambda(t)^{-1} R\right) \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is an inhomogeneous ODE in $R$ and $t$ can be treated as a parameter. Explicitly, the potential reads

$$
5 W(R)^{4}=\frac{5}{\left(1+\frac{R^{2}}{3}\right)^{2}}
$$

and the homogeneous equation has the fundamental system $\left\{\phi_{0}, \theta_{0}\right\}$ given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi_{0}(R)=R\left(1-\frac{R^{2}}{3}\right)\left(1+\frac{R^{2}}{3}\right)^{-\frac{3}{2}}=-\sqrt{3}+\phi_{0}^{*}(R) \\
& \theta_{0}(R)=\left(1+\frac{R^{2}}{3}\right)^{-\frac{3}{2}}\left(1-2 R^{2}+\frac{R^{4}}{9}\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} R+\theta_{0}^{*}(R)
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\left|\partial_{R}^{k} \phi_{0}^{*}(R)\right| \leq C_{k}\langle R\rangle^{-2-k}, \quad\left|\partial_{R}^{k} \theta_{0}^{*}(R)\right| \leq C_{k}\langle R\rangle^{-1-k}
$$

for all $R \geq 0$ and $k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. Furthermore, for the Wronskian we obtain $W\left(\theta_{0}, \phi_{0}\right)=$ $\theta_{0} \phi_{0}^{\prime}-\theta_{0}^{\prime} \phi_{0}=1$. According to the variation of constants formula, a solution $\tilde{v}_{0}$ of

Eq. (2.3) is therefore given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{v}_{0}(t, R)= & -\lambda(t)^{-2} \phi_{0}(R) \int_{0}^{R} \theta_{0}\left(R^{\prime}\right) R^{\prime} e_{0}\left(t, \lambda(t)^{-1} R^{\prime}\right) d R^{\prime} \\
& +\lambda(t)^{-2} \theta_{0}(R) \int_{0}^{R} \phi_{0}\left(R^{\prime}\right) R^{\prime} e_{0}\left(t, \lambda(t)^{-1} R^{\prime}\right) d R^{\prime}
\end{aligned}
$$

and by using Lemma 2.1 we obtain the claim concerning $v_{0}$.
The assertion for $e_{1}$ now follows from $e_{1}=-\partial_{t}^{2} v_{0}+N\left(u_{0}, v_{0}\right)$. We have
$e_{1}(t, r)=c_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2} t^{-2} \lambda(t) r+d_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2} t^{-2}-\partial_{t}^{2} v_{0}^{*}(t, r)+N\left(u_{0}, v_{0}\right)$
and $\left|\partial_{t}^{2} v_{0}^{*}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2+\epsilon} t^{-2}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1}$ where the $\epsilon$-loss comes from the logarithm. The nonlinear contributions are of higher order and belong to $e_{1}^{*}$ since

$$
\left|N\left(u_{0}, v_{0}\right)(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{5}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-4}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1}
$$

where we use $[\lambda(t) t]^{-1} \lesssim\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1}$ for $0 \leq r \lesssim t$. The derivative bounds follow from the corresponding bounds on $v_{0}^{*}$ by the Leibniz rule.

### 2.2 Improvement near the lightcone

We have to go one step further and continue improving our approximate solution. Thus, we add another correction $v_{1}$ to $u_{1}$ and set $u_{2}:=u_{1}+v_{1}=u_{0}+v_{0}+v_{1}$. This yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\square u_{2}+u_{2}^{5} & =\square v_{1}+5 u_{1}^{4} v_{1}+N\left(u_{1}, v_{1}\right)+\square u_{1}+u_{1}^{5} \\
& =\square v_{1}+5 u_{1}^{4} v_{1}+N\left(u_{1}, v_{1}\right)+e_{1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

This time we intend to improve the approximate solution near the lightcone $r=t$ since the decay of the error $e_{1}$ near the center is already good enough. Of course, near the lightcone we cannot ignore the temporal derivative but thanks to the decay of $u_{1}(t, t)$ it turns out that we may safely neglect the potential and the nonlinearity. Furthermore, we also ignore the higher order error $e_{1}^{*}$ which already decays fast enough. Thus, we arrive at the approximate equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square v_{1}(t, r)=-c_{v} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-4} \lambda(t) r-d_{v} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-4} \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the next error $e_{2}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{2}:=\square u_{2}+u_{2}^{5} . \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note carefully in Lemma 2.3 below that in order to gain decay in $t$ we sacrifice differentiability at the lightcone.

Lemma 2.3 There exists a solution $v_{1}=v_{11}+v_{12}$ of Eq. (2.4) and a decomposition $v_{1 j}=v_{1 j}^{g}+v_{1 j}^{b}, j=1,2$, such that
$\left|v_{11}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-4} r^{3}, \quad\left|v_{12}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-4} r^{2} \quad\left(r \leq \frac{1}{2} t\right)$
$\left|v_{11}^{g}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1}, \quad\left|v_{12}^{g}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-2} \quad(r \leq 2 t)$
$\left|v_{11}^{b}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-v)},\left|v_{12}^{b}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-2}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-3 v)}(r<t)$
for all $t \geq t_{0}>0$ and estimates for the derivatives follow by formally differentiating these bounds. As a consequence, the error $e_{2}$ as defined by Eq. (2.5), satisfies the bound

$$
\left|t^{2} e_{2}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2+\epsilon} t^{\frac{5}{2}|1-\nu|}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1}
$$

for $0<r<t-c$, all $t \geq t_{0}>c_{0} \geq c$ (where $c_{0}$ is a fixed constant), and for any (fixed) $\epsilon>0$. Finally, we have $\left.\partial_{r}^{2 k} v_{11}(t, r)\right|_{r=0}=\left.\partial_{r}^{2 k+1} v_{12}(t, r)\right|_{r=0}=0, k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$.

Proof Instead of solving Eq. (2.4) directly, we set $v_{1}=v_{11}+v_{12}$ and consider

$$
\square v_{11}=-c_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-4} \lambda(t) r, \quad \square v_{12}=-d_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-4}
$$

separately. In order to reduce these equations to ODEs, we use the self-similar coordinate $a=\frac{r}{t}$. We start with

$$
t^{2} \square v_{11}(t, r)=-c_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1} \frac{r}{t}
$$

and make the self-similar ansatz

$$
v_{11}(t, r)=\lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1} \tilde{v}_{11}\left(\frac{r}{t}\right)
$$

which yields

$$
\begin{align*}
& \left(1-a^{2}\right)\left[\tilde{v}_{11}^{\prime \prime}(a)+\frac{2}{a} \tilde{v}_{11}^{\prime}(a)\right]-(1+v) a \tilde{v}_{11}^{\prime}(a)-\left[\frac{1}{2}(1-v)-1\right]\left[\frac{1}{2}(1-v)-2\right] \\
& \tilde{v}_{11}(a)=-c_{v} a . \tag{2.6}
\end{align*}
$$

The homogeneous equation has the fundamental system $\left\{\theta_{ \pm}\right\}$given by

$$
\theta_{ \pm}(a)=\frac{1}{a}(1 \pm a)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-\nu)}
$$

with the Wronskian

$$
W\left(\theta_{+}, \theta_{-}\right)(a)=\frac{v-1}{a^{2}\left(1-a^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1+v)}}
$$

Furthermore, $\psi:=\theta_{-}-\theta_{+}$is another solution of the homogeneous equation which is smooth at $a=0$ and clearly, $W\left(\theta_{+}, \psi\right)=W\left(\theta_{+}, \theta_{-}\right)$. Consequently, a solution $\tilde{v}_{11}$ of Eq. (2.6) is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\tilde{v}_{11}(a)= & \frac{c_{\nu} \theta_{+}(a)}{\nu-1} \int_{0}^{a} b^{3}\left(1-b^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(v-1)} \psi(b) d b \\
& -\frac{c_{\nu} \psi(a)}{v-1} \int_{0}^{a} b^{3}\left(1-b^{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(\nu-1)} \theta_{+}(b) d b \tag{2.7}
\end{align*}
$$

and it follows that $\tilde{v}_{11}(a)=O\left(a^{3}\right)$ as $a \rightarrow 0$. Thus, we obtain $v_{11}(t, r)=$ $v_{11}^{g}(t, r)+v_{12}^{b}(t, r)$ with the stated bounds. Next, we turn to the equation $t^{2} \square v_{12}=$ $-d_{\nu} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-2}$. Here, we make the ansatz $v_{12}(t, r)=\lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} t^{-2} \tilde{v}_{12}\left(\frac{r}{t}\right)$ which yields Eq. (2.6) but with $v$ replaced by $3 v$. Thus, we obtain $\tilde{v}_{12}(a)=O\left(a^{2}\right)$ as $a \rightarrow 0$ and $v_{12}=v_{12}^{g}+v_{12}^{b}$ with the claimed bounds.

By construction, the error $e_{2}$ is given by

$$
e_{2}=5 u_{1}^{4} v_{1}+N\left(u_{1}, v_{1}\right)+e_{1}^{*}
$$

and from Lemma 2.2 we recall the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|u_{1}(t, r)\right| & \leq\left|u_{0}(t, r)\right|+\left|v_{0}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1}+\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2} \lambda(t) r \\
& \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1} \\
\left|e_{1}^{*}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2+\epsilon} t^{-2}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

From above we have the bounds

$$
\left|v_{1}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-4}\langle\lambda(t) r\rangle^{3}
$$

for $0 \leq r<\frac{1}{2} t$ and

$$
\left|v_{11}^{b}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-1}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-\nu)} \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-1} t^{\frac{1}{2}|1-\nu|}
$$

for $\frac{1}{2} t \leq r \leq t-c$. Furthermore,

$$
\left|v_{12}^{b}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-2}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-3 v)} \lesssim \lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}}[\lambda(t) t]^{-1} t^{\frac{1}{2}|1-v|}
$$

for $\frac{1}{2} t \leq r \leq t-c$ and the stated bounds for $e_{2}$ follow.
Remark 2.4 There is a slight nuisance associated with the function $v_{11}$ constructed in Lemma 2.3: its odd derivatives with respect to $r$ do not vanish at the origin, i.e., $v_{11}$ is not smooth at the center when viewed as a radial function on $\mathbb{R}^{3}$. This inconvenient
fact, however, is easily remedied if we replace $v_{11}$ by $\theta v_{11}$ where $\theta$ is a smooth function with $\theta(r)=r$ for, say, $r \in\left[0, \frac{1}{2}\right]$ and $\theta(r)=1$ for $r \geq 1$. This modification does not affect the bounds given in Lemma 2.3 (provided that $t_{0}>1$ ) and it yields the desired behavior near the center. Furthermore, since $\square\left(\theta v_{11}\right)(t, r)=\square v_{11}(t, r)$ for $r \geq 1$, the stated estimates for the corresponding error $e_{2}$ are not altered either. Consequently, we may equally well assume from the onset that $v_{11}$ and $e_{2}$ are smooth at the center (as functions on $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ ). This remark will be useful later on.

## 3 The transport equation

For the sake of clarity we outline the main results of this section.
(1) We make the ansatz $u=u_{2}+\varepsilon$ and perform the change of variables $(t, r) \mapsto$ $(\tau, R)$ where $\tau=\frac{1}{v} \lambda(t) t, R=\lambda(t) r$. From the requirement $\square u+u^{5}=0$ we derive an equation for $v(\tau, R):=\operatorname{Re}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)$ of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}^{2} v+\beta_{v}(\tau) \mathcal{D} v+\mathcal{L} v=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2}[\text { r.h.s. }] \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{D}=\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(R \partial_{R}-1\right), \beta_{v}(\tau)=\left(1-\frac{1}{v}\right) \tau^{-1}$, and $\mathcal{L}=-\partial_{R}^{2}-5 W(R)^{4}$.
(2) Next, we discuss the spectral theory of the Schrödinger operator $\mathcal{L}$. We derive the asymptotics of the spectral measure $\mu$ associated to $\mathcal{L}$ by applying WeylTitchmarsh theory. As a consequence, we obtain a precise description of the spectral transformation (the "distorted Fourier transform") $\mathcal{U}: L^{2}(0, \infty) \rightarrow$ $L^{2}(\sigma(\mathcal{L}), d \mu)$, the unitary map satisfying $\mathcal{U} \mathcal{K} f(\xi)=\xi \mathcal{U} f(\xi)$.
(3) We apply this map to Eq. (3.1) in order to "transform away" the potential $-5 W(R)^{4}$. This yields an equation for $^{4} x(\tau, \xi):=[\mathcal{U} v(\tau, \cdot)](\xi)$ of the form

$$
\left[\hat{\mathcal{D}}_{c}^{2}+\beta_{v}(\tau) \hat{\mathcal{D}}_{c}+\xi\right] x(\tau, \xi)=\tilde{\lambda}^{-2}(\tau)[\text { r.h.s. }]+\text { " } \mathcal{K}-\text { terms" }
$$

where $\hat{\mathcal{D}}_{c}=\partial_{\tau}-2 \beta_{\nu} \xi \partial_{\xi}+O\left(\tau^{-1}\right)$. The expression " $\mathcal{K}$-terms" stands for nonlocal error terms which arise from the application of $\mathcal{U}$ to $R \partial_{R}$ (in $\mathcal{D}$ ).
(4) Then we study the inhomogeneous equation

$$
\left[\hat{\mathcal{D}}_{c}^{2}+\beta_{v}(\tau) \hat{\mathcal{D}}_{c}+\xi\right] x(\tau, \xi)=b(\tau, \xi)
$$

and solve it by the method of characteristics. We obtain suitable pointwise bounds for the kernel of the solution operator (the "parametrix").
(5) Finally, we introduce the basic solution spaces we work with and prove bounds for the parametrix in these spaces.

[^3]
### 3.1 Change of variables

The function $u_{2}$ constructed in Sect. 2 satisfies the critical wave equation only up to an error $e_{2}$. In this section we aim at constructing an exact solution to

$$
\square u+u^{5}=0
$$

of the form $u=u_{2}+\varepsilon$ where $\varepsilon(t, r)$ decays sufficiently fast as $t \rightarrow \infty$. Recall that $u_{2}$ is nonsmooth at the lightcone and thus, we restrict our construction to a truncated forward lightcone

$$
K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty}:=\left\{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3}: t \geq t_{0},|x| \leq t-c\right\}
$$

for $t_{0}>c>0$. Consequently, we have to solve the equation

$$
\square \varepsilon+5 u_{2}^{4} \varepsilon+N\left(u_{2}, \varepsilon\right)+e_{2}=0
$$

which we rewrite as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square \varepsilon+5 u_{0}^{4} \varepsilon=5\left(u_{0}^{4}-u_{2}^{4}\right) \varepsilon-N\left(u_{2}, \varepsilon\right)-e_{2} . \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

As before, in order to obtain a time-independent potential, we use the new space variable $R(t, r)=\lambda(t) r$. Furthermore, it is convenient to introduce the new time variable $\tau(t)=\frac{1}{v} t^{\nu}$. We write $\lambda(t)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau(t))$ and note that

$$
\tau^{\prime}(t)=\lambda(t), \quad \tilde{\lambda}^{\prime}(\tau(t))=\frac{\lambda^{\prime}(t)}{\lambda(t)} .
$$

Consequently, the derivatives transform according to

$$
\partial_{t}=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)\left(\partial_{\tau}+\tilde{\lambda}^{\prime}(\tau) \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R \partial_{R}\right), \quad \partial_{r}=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau) \partial_{R}
$$

and by setting $\tilde{v}(\tau(t), R(t, r))=\varepsilon(t, r)$ we obtain from Eq. (3.2) the problem

$$
\begin{align*}
& {\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) R \partial_{R}\right]^{2} \tilde{v}+\beta_{v}(\tau)\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) R \partial_{R}\right] \tilde{v}-\left[\partial_{R}^{2}+\frac{2}{R} \partial_{R}+5 W(R)^{4}\right] \tilde{v}} \\
& \quad=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2}\left[5\left(u_{2}^{4}-u_{0}^{4}\right) \tilde{v}+N\left(u_{2}, \tilde{v}\right)+e_{2}\right] \tag{3.3}
\end{align*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta_{\nu}(\tau)=\tilde{\lambda}^{\prime}(\tau) \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1}=-\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right) \tau^{-1} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where it is understood, of course, that the functions $u_{0}, u_{2}$ and $e_{2}$ be evaluated accordingly. Finally, the standard substitution $\tilde{v}(\tau, R)=R^{-1} v(\tau, R)$ transforms the radial
$3 d$ Laplacian into the radial $1 d$ Laplacian and, by noting that

$$
\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) R \partial_{R}\right] \frac{v(\tau, R)}{R}=\frac{1}{R}\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) R \partial_{R}-\beta_{v}(\tau)\right] v(\tau, R),
$$

we end up with the main equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}^{2} v+\beta_{v}(\tau) \mathcal{D} v+\mathcal{L} v=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2}\left[5\left(u_{2}^{4}-u_{0}^{4}\right) v+R N\left(u_{2}, R^{-1} v\right)+R e_{2}\right] \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathcal{D}=\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(R \partial_{R}-1\right)$ and $\mathcal{L}=-\partial_{R}^{2}-5 W(R)^{4}$. Our goal is to solve Eq. (3.5) backwards in time with zero Cauchy data at $\tau=\infty$. Roughly speaking, the idea is to perform a distorted Fourier transform with respect to the self-adjoint operator $\mathcal{L}$ and to solve the remaining transport-type equation on the Fourier side by the method of characteristics.

### 3.2 Spectral theory of $\mathcal{L}$ and the distorted Fourier transform

In the following we recall some standard facts about the spectral theory of $\mathcal{L}$, see e.g. $[8,14,49,50]$. We write $V:=-5 W^{4}$ and emphasize that $V(R)$ depends smoothly on $R$ and decays like $R^{-4}$ as $R \rightarrow \infty$. The Schrödinger operator $\mathcal{L}=-\partial_{R}^{2}+V$ is self-adjoint in $L^{2}(0, \infty)$ with domain
$\operatorname{dom}(\mathcal{L})=\left\{f \in L^{2}(0, \infty): f, f^{\prime} \in A C[0, R] \forall R>0, f(0)=0, \mathcal{L} f \in L^{2}(0, \infty)\right\}$
since the endpoint 0 is regular whereas $\infty$ is in the limit-point case. Furthermore, there exists a zero energy resonance which is induced by the scaling symmetry of the wave equation. More precisely, the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{0}(R)=\left.2 R \partial_{\lambda}\right|_{\lambda=1} \lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda R)=\frac{R\left(1-\frac{1}{3} R^{2}\right)}{\left(1+\frac{1}{3} R^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

belongs to $L^{\infty}(0, \infty)$ and (formally) satisfies $\mathcal{L} \phi_{0}=0$. Since $\phi_{0}$ has precisely one zero on $(0, \infty)$, it follows by Sturm oscillation theory (see e.g. [8]) that $\mathcal{L}$ has exactly one simple negative eigenvalue $\xi_{d}<0$. The corresponding eigenfunction $\phi_{d}$ is smooth and positive on $(0, \infty)$ and decays exponentially towards $\infty$. Thus, the spectrum of $\mathcal{L}$ is given by $\sigma(\mathcal{L})=\left\{\xi_{d}\right\} \cup[0, \infty)$ and thanks to the decay of $V$, the continuous part is in fact absolutely continuous.

We denote by $\{\phi(\cdot, z), \theta(\cdot, z)\}, z \in \mathbb{C}$, the standard fundamental system of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{L} f=z f \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

satisfying

$$
\phi(0, z)=\theta^{\prime}(0, z)=0, \quad \phi^{\prime}(0, z)=\theta(0, z)=1
$$

In particular we have $W(\theta(\cdot, z), \phi(\cdot, z))=1$ for all $z \in \mathbb{C}$. Furthermore, $\psi(\cdot, z)$ for $z \in \mathbb{C} \backslash \mathbb{R}$ denotes the Weyl-Titchmarsh solution of Eq. (3.7), i.e., the unique solution of Eq. (3.7) which belongs to $L^{2}(0, \infty)$ and satisfies $\psi(0, z)=1$. Consequently, for each $z \in \mathbb{C} \backslash \mathbb{R}$ there exists a number $m(z)$ such that

$$
\psi(\cdot, z)=\theta(\cdot, z)+m(z) \phi(\cdot, z)
$$

and we obtain $m(z)=W(\theta(\cdot, z), \psi(\cdot, z))$. The Weyl-Titchmarsh $m$-function is of crucial importance since it determines the spectral measure.

Proposition 3.1 (1) For any $\xi>0$ the limit

$$
\rho(\xi):=\frac{1}{\pi} \lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \operatorname{Im} m(\xi+i \varepsilon)
$$

exists but $\rho(\xi) \rightarrow \infty$ as $\xi \rightarrow 0+$.
(2) Let $\mu$ be the Borel measure defined by

$$
d \mu(\xi)=\frac{d \Theta_{\xi_{d}}(\xi)}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}}+\rho(\xi) d \xi
$$

where $d \Theta_{\xi_{d}}$ denotes the Dirac measure at $\xi_{d}$. Then there exists a unitary operator $\mathcal{U}: L^{2}(0, \infty) \rightarrow L^{2}(\sigma(\mathcal{L}), d \mu)$, the "distorted Fourier transform", which diagonalizes $\mathcal{L}$, i.e.,

$$
\mathcal{U} \mathcal{L}=M_{i d} \mathcal{U}
$$

where $M_{\text {id }}$ is the (maximally defined) operator of multiplication by the identity function. ${ }^{5}$
(3) The distorted Fourier transform is explicitly given by

$$
\mathcal{U} f(\xi)=\lim _{b \rightarrow \infty} \int_{0}^{b} \phi(R, \xi) f(R) d R, \quad \xi \in \sigma(\mathcal{L})
$$

where the limit is understood with respect to $\|\cdot\|_{L^{2}(\sigma(\mathcal{L}), d \mu)}$.
(4) The inverse transform $\mathcal{U}^{-1}$ reads

$$
\mathcal{U}^{-1} \hat{f}(R)=\frac{\phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right)}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}} \hat{f}\left(\xi_{d}\right)+\lim _{b \rightarrow \infty} \int_{0}^{b} \phi(R, \xi) \hat{f}(\xi) \rho(\xi) d \xi
$$

where the limit is understood with respect to $\|\cdot\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}$.

[^4]Proof Let $\operatorname{Im} z>0$ (and $\operatorname{Im} \sqrt{z}>0$ ). The Weyl-Titchmarsh solution is given by $\psi(\cdot, z)=c_{0}(z) f_{+}(\cdot, z)$ where the Jost function $f_{+}(\cdot, z)$ is defined by $\mathcal{L} f_{+}(\cdot, z)=$ $z f_{+}(\cdot, z)$ and $f_{+}(R, z) \sim e^{i \sqrt{z} R}$ as $R \rightarrow \infty$. The coefficient $c_{0}(z)$ is chosen such that $\psi(0, z)=1$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{0}(z)=\frac{1}{W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, z), \phi(\cdot, z)\right)} . \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Jost function satisfies the Volterra equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{+}(R, z)=e^{i \sqrt{z} R}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{z}} \int_{R}^{\infty} \sin \left(\sqrt{z}\left(R^{\prime}-R\right)\right) V\left(R^{\prime}\right) f_{+}\left(R^{\prime}, z\right) d R^{\prime} \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and from this representation it follows immediately that

$$
f_{+}(R, \xi)=\lim _{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} f_{+}(R, \xi+i \varepsilon)
$$

exists provided that $\xi>0$ and moreover, $f_{+}(R, \xi)$ satisfies Eq. (3.9) with $z=\xi$, cf. [5]. From Eq. (3.9) we also have $W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, z), \overline{f_{+}(\cdot, z)}\right)=-2 i \sqrt{z}$ and thus, by expanding

$$
f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)=a(\xi) \phi(\cdot, \xi)+b(\xi) \theta(\cdot, \xi)
$$

we obtain (recall that $\phi(\cdot, \xi)$ and $\theta(\cdot, \xi)$ are real-valued)

$$
-2 i \sqrt{\xi}=W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \overline{f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)}\right)=2 i \operatorname{Im}(\overline{a(\xi)} b(\xi))
$$

which in particular implies $b(\xi) \neq 0$ if $\xi>0$. Consequently, we infer

$$
W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \phi(\cdot, \xi)\right)=b(\xi) \neq 0
$$

and this shows that $c_{0}(\xi)$ (and therefore $\psi(R, \xi)$ ) is well-defined and finite provided that $\xi>0$. However, due to the zero energy resonance we clearly have $\left|c_{0}(\xi)\right| \rightarrow \infty$ as $\xi \rightarrow 0+$. The connection between the Weyl-Titchmarsh $m$-function and the spectral measure $\mu$ is provided by the classical formula

$$
\tilde{\mu}(\xi)=\frac{1}{\pi} \lim _{\delta \rightarrow 0+\varepsilon \rightarrow 0+} \lim _{\delta} \int_{\delta}^{\xi+\delta} \operatorname{Im} m(t+i \varepsilon) d t
$$

where the distribution function $\tilde{\mu}$ determines $\mu$ in the sense of Lebesgue-Stieltjes. The statements about the distorted Fourier transform are well-known and classical, see e.g. [8, 14, 49,50].

### 3.3 Asymptotics of the spectral measure for small $\xi$

In order to be able to apply the distorted Fourier transform, we require more detailed information on the behavior of the spectral measure. We start with the asymptotics as $\xi \rightarrow 0+$ where the spectral measure blows up due to the existence of the zero energy resonance. We also obtain estimates for the fundamental system $\{\phi(\cdot, \xi), \theta(\cdot, \xi)\}$ which will be relevant later on. As before, $\phi_{0}(R)=\phi(R, 0)$ is the resonance function given in Eq. (3.6) and we write $\theta_{0}(R):=\theta(R, 0)$. Explicitly, we have

$$
\theta_{0}(R)=\frac{1-2 R^{2}+\frac{1}{9} R^{4}}{\left(1+\frac{1}{3} R^{2}\right)^{3 / 2}}
$$

Lemma 3.2 There exists a (complex-valued) function $\Phi(\cdot, \xi)$ satisfying $\mathcal{L} \Phi(\cdot, \xi)=$ $\xi \Phi(\cdot, \xi)$ such that

$$
\Phi(R, \xi)=\left[\phi_{0}(R)+i \theta_{0}(R)\right][1+a(R, \xi)]
$$

where $a(0, \xi)=a^{\prime}(0, \xi)=0$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left|\partial_{\xi}^{\ell} \partial_{R}^{k}[\operatorname{Re} a(R, \xi)]\right| \leq C_{k, \ell}\langle R\rangle^{2-k} \xi^{1-\ell} \\
&\left|\partial_{\xi}^{\ell} \partial_{R}^{k}[\operatorname{Ima} a(R, \xi)]\right| \leq C_{k, \ell}\left[\langle R\rangle^{1-k} \xi^{1-\ell}+\langle R\rangle^{4-k} \xi^{2-\ell}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $R \in\left[0, \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right], 0<\xi \lesssim 1$ and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. In particular, we have $\phi=\operatorname{Re} \Phi$ and $\theta=\operatorname{Im} \Phi$.

Proof We write $\Phi_{0}:=\phi_{0}+i \theta_{0}$ and note that $\Phi_{0}$ does not vanish anywhere on $[0, \infty)$. Inserting the ansatz $\Phi(\cdot, \xi)=\Phi_{0}[1+a(\cdot, \xi)]$ into $\mathcal{L} \Phi(\cdot, \xi)=\xi \Phi(\cdot, \xi)$ yields the Volterra equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
a(R, \xi)=-\xi \int_{0}^{R} \int_{R^{\prime}}^{R} \Phi_{0}\left(R^{\prime \prime}\right)^{-2} d R^{\prime \prime} \Phi_{0}\left(R^{\prime}\right)^{2}\left[1+a\left(R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right] d R^{\prime} \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is of the form

$$
a(R, \xi)=\int_{0}^{R} K\left(R, R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\left[1+a\left(R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right] d R^{\prime}
$$

with a kernel satisfying $\left|K\left(R, R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right| \lesssim\left\langle R^{\prime}\right\rangle \xi$ for all $0 \leq R^{\prime} \leq R$ and $\xi>0$. Consequently, we have

$$
\int_{0}^{\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}} \sup _{R \in\left(R^{\prime}, \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)}\left|K\left(R, R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right| d R^{\prime} \lesssim 1
$$

and a standard Volterra iteration yields the existence of $a(\cdot, \xi)$ with $|a(R, \xi)| \lesssim\langle R\rangle^{2} \xi$ for all $R \in\left[0, \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right]$ and $0<\xi \lesssim 1$. Obviously, we have $a(0, \xi)=a^{\prime}(0, \xi)=0$ and this immediately yields $\phi=\operatorname{Re} \Phi$ and $\theta=\operatorname{Im} \Phi$. Now observe that, for $0 \leq R^{\prime} \leq R$,
$\int_{R^{\prime}}^{R} \Phi_{0}\left(R^{\prime \prime}\right)^{-2} d R^{\prime \prime}=\int_{R^{\prime}}^{R}\left[O\left(\left\langle R^{\prime \prime}\right\rangle^{-2}\right)+i O\left(\left\langle R^{\prime \prime}\right\rangle^{-3}\right)\right] d R^{\prime \prime}=O\left(\left\langle R^{\prime}\right\rangle^{-1}\right)+i O\left(\left\langle R^{\prime}\right\rangle^{-2}\right)$
which implies

$$
\int_{R^{\prime}}^{R} \Phi_{0}\left(R^{\prime \prime}\right)^{-2} d R^{\prime \prime} \Phi_{0}\left(R^{\prime}\right)^{2}=O\left(\left\langle R^{\prime}\right\rangle\right)+i O(1)
$$

Consequently, with $|a(R, \xi)| \lesssim\langle R\rangle^{2} \xi$ from above and Eq. (3.10) we infer
$\operatorname{Im} a(R, \xi)=O(\langle R\rangle \xi)+\xi \operatorname{Im} \int_{0}^{R} O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\left\langle R^{\prime}\right\rangle\right) a\left(R^{\prime}, \xi\right) d R^{\prime}=O(\langle R\rangle \xi)+O\left(\langle R\rangle^{4} \xi^{2}\right)$.
The derivative bounds follow inductively from Eq. (3.10) by symbol calculus.
Next, we consider the Jost function $f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$.
Lemma 3.3 The Jost function $f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$ of the operator $\mathcal{L}$ is of the form

$$
f_{+}(R, \xi)=e^{i \sqrt{\xi} R}[1+b(R, \xi)]
$$

where $b(\cdot, \xi)$ satisfies the bounds

$$
\left|\partial_{\xi}^{\ell} \partial_{R}^{k} b(R, \xi)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell}\langle R\rangle^{-3-k} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}-\ell}
$$

for all $R \geq \xi^{-\frac{1}{6}}, 0<\xi \lesssim 1$ and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$.
Proof The function $b(\cdot, \xi)$ satisfies the Volterra equation

$$
\begin{align*}
b(R, \xi) & =\frac{1}{2 i \sqrt{\xi}} \int_{R}^{\infty}\left[e^{2 i \sqrt{\xi}\left(R^{\prime}-R\right)}-1\right] V\left(R^{\prime}\right)\left[1+b\left(R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right] d R^{\prime} \\
& =\int_{R}^{\infty} K\left(R, R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\left[1+b\left(R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right] d R^{\prime} \tag{3.11}
\end{align*}
$$

Thanks to the strong decay of $V$ we have $\left|K\left(R, R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right| \lesssim\left\langle R^{\prime}\right\rangle^{-4} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ for $R \leq R^{\prime}$ and thus,

$$
\int_{\xi^{-\frac{1}{6}}}^{\infty} \sup _{R \in\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{6}}, R^{\prime}\right)}\left|K\left(R, R^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right| d R^{\prime} \lesssim 1 .
$$

Consequently, a standard Volterra iteration yields the claim. The derivative bounds follow inductively by symbol calculus.

The information provided by Lemmas 3.2 and 3.3 already suffices to obtain the asymptotics of the spectral measure for $\xi \rightarrow 0+$.

Lemma 3.4 For the functions $c_{0}$ and $\rho$ given in Eq. (3.8) and Proposition 3.1, respectively, we have

$$
c_{0}(\xi)=-\frac{i}{\sqrt{3}} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right], \quad \rho(\xi)=\frac{1}{3 \pi} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]
$$

for $0<\xi \ll 1$ where the $O$-terms behave like symbols under differentiation.
Proof For the Weyl-Titchmarsh solution $\psi(\cdot, \xi)$ we have $\psi(\cdot, \xi)=c_{0}(\xi) f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$ where the coefficient $c_{0}(\xi)$ is given by

$$
c_{0}(\xi)=\frac{1}{W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \phi(\cdot, \xi)\right)}
$$

cf. the proof of Proposition 3.1. From Lemma 3.2 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\phi(R, \xi) & =\operatorname{Re} \Phi(R, \xi)=\phi_{0}(R)[1+\operatorname{Re} a(R, \xi)]-\theta_{0}(R) \operatorname{Im} a(R, \xi) \\
& =\phi_{0}(R)\left[1+O\left(\langle R\rangle^{2} \xi\right)+O\left(\langle R\rangle^{5} \xi^{2}\right)\right], \quad R \geq 1
\end{aligned}
$$

and, by noting that $\left|\phi_{0}^{\prime}(R)\right| \simeq\langle R\rangle^{-3}$ for $R \geq 1$,

$$
\phi^{\prime}(R, \xi)=O\left(\langle R\rangle^{-3}\right)\left[1+O\left(\langle R\rangle^{4} \xi\right)+O\left(\langle R\rangle^{7} \xi^{2}\right)\right], \quad R \geq 1
$$

We evaluate the Wronskian at $R=\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}$. Thus, we use

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}, \xi\right)=\phi_{0}\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}\right)\left[1+O\left(\xi^{\frac{2}{5}}\right)\right] \\
& \phi^{\prime}\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}, \xi\right)=-\sqrt{3}\left[1+O\left(\xi^{\frac{2}{5}}\right)\right] \\
&\left.\frac{9}{10}\right)\left[1+O\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]=O\left(\xi^{\frac{7}{10}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and, from Lemma 3.3,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{+}\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}, \xi\right)=e^{i \xi^{1 / 5}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{2}{5}}\right)\right]=1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right) \\
& f_{+}^{\prime}\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}, \xi\right)=i \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} e^{i \xi^{1 / 5}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]=i \xi^{\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and all $O$-terms behave like symbols under differentiation. Consequently, we obtain

$$
W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \phi(\cdot, \xi)\right)=\sqrt{3} i \xi^{\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]
$$

and thus, $c_{0}(\xi)=-\frac{i}{\sqrt{3}} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]$ where the $O$-term behaves like a symbol.
The Weyl-Titchmarsh $m$-function is given by

$$
m(\xi)=W(\theta(\cdot, \xi), \psi(\cdot, \xi))=c_{0}(\xi) W\left(\theta(\cdot, \xi), f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)\right)
$$

From Lemma 3.2 we have

$$
\theta\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}, \xi\right)=O\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}\right), \quad \theta^{\prime}\left(\xi^{-\frac{3}{10}}, \xi\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}+O\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)
$$

and thus, $W\left(\theta(\cdot, \xi), f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)\right)=-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)$. This yields $\rho(\xi)=\frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im} m(\xi)=$ $\frac{1}{3 \pi} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right)\right]$ with an $O$-term that behaves like a symbol.

### 3.4 Asymptotics of the spectral measure for large $\xi$

In this section we study the behavior of $\rho(\xi)$ as $\xi \rightarrow \infty$. This is considerably easier than the limit $\xi \rightarrow 0+$. In order to get a small factor in front of the potential, it is convenient to rescale the equation $\mathcal{L} f=\xi f$ by setting $f(R)=\tilde{f}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{2}} R\right)$ which yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{f}^{\prime \prime}(y)+\tilde{f}(y)=\xi^{-1} V\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} y\right) \tilde{f}(y) \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $y \geq 0, \xi \gtrsim 1$ and this form already suggests to treat the right-hand side perturbatively.

Lemma 3.5 The Jost function $f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$ of $\mathcal{L}$ is of the form

$$
f_{+}(R, \xi)=e^{i \sqrt{\xi} R}[1+b(R, \xi)]
$$

where

$$
\left|\partial_{\xi}^{\ell} \partial_{R}^{k} b(R, \xi)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell}\langle R\rangle^{-3-k} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}-\ell}
$$

for all $R \geq 0, \xi \gtrsim 1$ and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$.
Proof We start by constructing a solution $\tilde{f}_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$ to Eq. (3.12) of the form $\tilde{f}_{+}(y, \xi)=$ $e^{i y}[1+\tilde{b}(y, \xi)]$. Inserting this ansatz into Eq. (3.12) yields the Volterra equation

$$
\begin{align*}
\tilde{b}(y, \xi) & =\frac{1}{2 i} \xi^{-1} \int_{y}^{\infty}\left[e^{2 i\left(y^{\prime}-y\right)}-1\right] V\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} y^{\prime}\right)\left[1+\tilde{b}\left(y^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right] d y^{\prime} \\
& =\int_{y}^{\infty} K\left(y, y^{\prime}, \xi\right)\left[1+\tilde{b}\left(y^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right] d y^{\prime} \tag{3.13}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\left|K\left(y, y^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right| \lesssim \xi^{-1}\left\langle\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} y^{\prime}\right\rangle^{-4}$ for all $0 \leq y \leq y^{\prime}$ and $\xi \gtrsim 1$. Consequently, we have

$$
\int_{0}^{\infty} \sup _{y \in\left(0, y^{\prime}\right)}\left|K\left(y, y^{\prime}, \xi\right)\right| d y^{\prime} \lesssim \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim 1
$$

and a Volterra iteration yields $|\tilde{b}(y, \xi)| \lesssim \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left\langle\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} y\right\rangle^{-3}$. Furthermore, by introducing the new variable $u=y^{\prime}-y$, we rewrite Eq. (3.13) as

$$
\tilde{b}(y, \xi)=\frac{1}{2 i} \xi^{-1} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left[e^{2 i u}-1\right] V\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}(u+y)\right)[1+\tilde{b}(u+y, \xi)] d u
$$

and with

$$
\left|\partial_{\xi}^{\ell} \partial_{y}^{k} V\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}(u+y)\right)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2} k-\ell}\left\langle\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}(u+y)\right\rangle^{-4-k}, \quad k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}
$$

for all $y, u \geq 0, \xi \gtrsim 1$, we obtain inductively the bounds

$$
\left|\partial_{\xi}^{\ell} \partial_{y}^{k} \tilde{b}(y, \xi)\right| \leq C_{k, \ell} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2} k-\ell}\left\langle\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} y\right\rangle^{-3-k}
$$

for all $y \geq 0, \xi \gtrsim 1$ and $k, \ell \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. We have $\tilde{f}_{+}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{2}} R\right) \sim e^{i \sqrt{\xi} R}$ as $R \rightarrow \infty$ and thus, as already suggested by the notation, the Jost solution is given by $f_{+}(R, \xi)=$ $\tilde{f}_{+}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{2}} R, \xi\right)$ and by setting $b(R, \xi)=\tilde{b}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{2}} R, \xi\right)$ we obtain the stated form of $f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$ and the bounds for $b$ follow from the ones for $\tilde{b}$ by the chain rule.

Lemma 3.6 The functions $c_{0}$ and $\rho$ are of the form

$$
c_{0}(\xi)=1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right), \quad \rho(\xi)=\frac{1}{\pi} \xi^{\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\right]
$$

for $\xi \gtrsim 1$ where the $O$-terms behave like symbols under differentiation.
Proof By evaluation at $R=0$ we obtain from Lemma 3.5

$$
W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \phi(\cdot, \xi)\right)=f_{+}(0, \xi)=1+b(0, \xi)=1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)
$$

which, by Eq. (3.8), implies $c_{0}(\xi)=1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)$ where the $O$-term behaves like a symbol. Furthermore, we have

$$
W\left(\theta(\cdot, \xi), f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)\right)=f_{+}^{\prime}(0, \xi)=i \xi^{\frac{1}{2}}[1+b(0, \xi)]+b^{\prime}(0, \xi)=i \xi^{\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\right]
$$

and we infer

$$
\rho(\xi)=\frac{1}{\pi} \operatorname{Im}\left[c_{0}(\xi) W\left(\theta(\cdot, \xi), f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)\right)\right]=\frac{1}{\pi} \xi^{\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\right]
$$

with an $O$-term that behaves like a symbol.
It is now a simple matter to obtain a convenient representation of $\phi(\cdot, \xi)$ in terms of the Jost function $f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)$.
Corollary 3.7 The function $\phi(\cdot, \xi)$ has the representation

$$
\phi(R, \xi)=a(\xi) f_{+}(R, \xi)+\overline{a(\xi) f_{+}(R, \xi)}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a(\xi)=\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{\frac{1}{5}}\right), \quad 0<\xi \ll 1 \\
& a(\xi)=\frac{1}{2 i} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\right], \quad \xi \gtrsim 1
\end{aligned}
$$

and the $O$-terms behave like symbols.
Proof Since $W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \overline{f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)}\right)=-2 i \sqrt{\xi}$ it is clear that there exist coefficients $a(\xi), b(\xi)$ such that $\phi(\cdot, \xi)=a(\xi) f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)+b(\xi) \overline{f_{+}(\cdot, \xi)}$ provided that $\xi>0$. From the fact that $\phi(\cdot, \xi)$ is real-valued it follows that $b(\xi)=\overline{a(\xi)}$. Consequently, we obtain

$$
\frac{1}{c_{0}(\xi)}=W\left(f_{+}(\cdot, \xi), \phi(\cdot, \xi)\right)=-2 i \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \overline{a(\xi)}
$$

and Lemmas 3.4, 3.6 yield the claim.

### 3.5 The transference identity

Unfortunately, it is not straightforward to apply the distorted Fourier transform to Eq. (3.5) due to the presence of the derivative $R \partial_{R}$. The idea is to substitute the term $R \partial_{R}$ by a suitable derivative on the Fourier side. This is not possible without making an error. For the following it is convenient to distinguish between the continuous and the discrete part of the spectrum of $\mathcal{L}$. This is most effectively done by introducing vector notation. Consequently, we interpret the distorted Fourier transform, now denoted by $\mathcal{F}$, as a vector-valued map $\mathcal{F}: L^{2}(0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{C} \times L^{2}((0, \infty), \rho(\xi) d \xi)$ given by

$$
\mathcal{F} f:=\binom{\mathcal{U} f\left(\xi_{d}\right)}{\left.\mathcal{U} f\right|_{[0, \infty)}}
$$

with $\mathcal{U}$ from Proposition 3.1. By Proposition 3.1 the inverse map

$$
\mathcal{F}^{-1}: \mathbb{C} \times L^{2}((0, \infty), \rho(\xi) d \xi) \rightarrow L^{2}(0, \infty)
$$

reads

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{a}{f}=a \frac{\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}}+\lim _{b \rightarrow \infty} \int_{0}^{b} \phi(\cdot, \xi) f(\xi) \rho(\xi) d \xi \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

We define the error operator $\mathcal{K}$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{F}\left((\cdot) f^{\prime}-f\right)=\mathcal{A F} f+\mathcal{K} \mathcal{F} f \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $f \in C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$ where

$$
\mathcal{A}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 0 \\
0 & \mathcal{A}_{c}
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathcal{A}_{c} g(\xi):=-2 \xi g^{\prime}(\xi)-\left(\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right) g(\xi)
$$

and we write

$$
\mathcal{K}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\mathcal{K}_{d d} & \mathcal{K}_{d c} \\
\mathcal{K}_{c d} & \mathcal{K}_{c c}
\end{array}\right)
$$

for the matrix components of $\mathcal{K}$. We call Eq. (3.15) the "transference identity" since it allows us to transfer derivatives with respect to $R$ to derivatives with respect to the Fourier variable $\xi$. In order to motivate the definitions of $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{K}$, let us take the free case as a model problem, i.e., assume for the moment that $V=0$ and $\mathcal{L}=-\partial_{R}^{2}$. Note, however, that the free case with a Dirichlet condition at zero is not a good model for our problem since it is not resonant. Consequently, we assume a Neumann condition instead. In the free case there is no discrete spectrum and the corresponding $\phi(\cdot, \xi)$ can be given explicitly and reads $\phi(R, \xi)=-\cos \left(\xi^{\frac{1}{2}} R\right)$. Furthermore, the spectral measure is $\rho(\xi)=\frac{1}{\pi} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. For the transference identity we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{U}\left((\cdot) f^{\prime}-f\right)(\xi) & =\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi) R f^{\prime}(R) d R-\mathcal{U} f(\xi) \\
& =-\int_{0}^{\infty} R \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \sin \left(\xi^{\frac{1}{2}} R\right) f(R) d R-2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi) f(R) d R \\
& =-2 \xi \partial_{\xi} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi) f(R) d R-2 \mathcal{U} f(\xi) \\
& =-2 \xi(\mathcal{U} f)^{\prime}(\xi)-\left(\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right) \mathcal{U} f(\xi)
\end{aligned}
$$

for $f \in C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$ and we recover the operator $\mathcal{A}_{c}$ whereas the corresponding error operator is identically zero. Due to the strong decay of $V(R)$ as $R \rightarrow \infty$ it is reasonable to expect that the transference identity Eq. (3.15) is well approximated by the above model case, at least to leading order. Therefore, $\mathcal{K}$ should be "small" in a suitable sense. We will make this idea rigorous in Sect. 5 where we prove appropriate mapping properties of $\mathcal{K}$ which exhibit a certain smoothing effect that turns out to be crucial for the whole construction.

### 3.6 Application of the distorted Fourier transform

Now we intend to apply the distorted Fourier transform to Eq. (3.5). In order to be able to do so, however, we have to deal with the fact that the functions on the right-hand side of Eq. (3.5) are only defined in a forward lightcone and we have to extend them smoothly to all $r \geq 0$. To this end we use a smooth cut-off $\chi$ satisfying $\chi(x)=0$ for $x \leq \frac{1}{2}$ and $\chi(x)=1$ for $x \geq 1$. Then $\chi\left(\frac{t-r}{c}\right)$ is identically 1 in the truncated cone $r \leq t-c$ and identically 0 if $r \geq t-\frac{c}{2}$. Of course, we assume here that $t \geq c$. Furthermore, in terms of the new variables $\tau=\frac{1}{v} t^{\nu}=\frac{1}{v} \lambda(t) t$ and $R=\lambda(t) r$, the cut-off reads

$$
\tilde{\chi}(\tau, R):=\chi\left(\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \frac{v \tau-R}{c}\right) .
$$

Consequently, the equation we really want to solve is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}^{2} v+\beta_{v}(\tau) \mathcal{D} v+\mathcal{L} v=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}\left[5\left(u_{2}^{4}-u_{0}^{4}\right) v+R N\left(u_{2}, R^{-1} v\right)+R e_{2}\right] \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

cf. Eq. (3.5), and we recall that $\mathcal{D}=\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(R \partial_{R}-1\right)$. Thus, we have

$$
\mathcal{F} \mathcal{D}=\partial_{\tau} \mathcal{F}+\beta_{\nu}(\mathcal{A}+\mathcal{K}) \mathcal{F}=: \hat{\mathcal{D}} \mathcal{F}
$$

and this yields $\mathcal{F} \mathcal{D}^{2}=\hat{\mathcal{D}}^{2} \mathcal{F}$ where

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{\mathcal{D}}^{2} & =\partial_{\tau}^{2}+2 \beta_{v}(\mathcal{A}+\mathcal{K}) \partial_{\tau}+\beta_{\nu}^{2}\left(\mathcal{A}^{2}+\mathcal{K} \mathcal{A}+\mathcal{A} \mathcal{K}+\mathcal{K}^{2}\right)+\beta_{v}^{\prime}(\mathcal{A}+\mathcal{K}) \\
& =\left(\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{\nu} \mathcal{A}\right)^{2}+2 \beta_{\nu} \mathcal{K} \partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}^{2}\left(2 \mathcal{K} \mathcal{A}+[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]+\mathcal{K}^{2}\right)+\beta_{\nu}^{\prime} \mathcal{K}
\end{aligned}
$$

We conclude that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \hat{\mathcal{D}}^{2}+\beta_{\nu} \hat{\mathcal{D}}=\left(\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v} \mathcal{A}\right)^{2}+\beta_{\nu}(2 \mathcal{K}+1)\left(\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{\nu} \mathcal{A}\right) \\
& \quad+\beta_{v}^{2}\left(\mathcal{K}^{2}+[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]+\mathcal{K}+\frac{\beta_{v}^{\prime}}{\beta_{v}^{2}} \mathcal{K}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

In the following we write $\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \xi)\right)=\mathcal{F} v(\tau, \cdot)(\xi)$. Consequently, by applying $\mathcal{F}$ to Eq. (3.16), we end up with the system

$$
\left.\begin{array}{l}
\left(\begin{array}{c}
\partial_{\tau}^{2}+\xi_{d} \\
0
\end{array}\left(\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) \mathcal{A}_{c}\right)^{2}+\xi\right.
\end{array}\right)\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{x(\tau, \xi)} .
$$

where the operators $\mathcal{N}_{j}, j \in\{1,2,3,4,5\}$, are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{N}_{j}\binom{x_{d}}{x}(\tau, \xi):=\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi_{j}(\tau, \cdot)\left[|\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{x(\tau, \cdot)}\right]^{j}\right)(\xi) \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varphi_{1}(\tau, R)=5 \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}(\tau, R)\left[u_{2}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)^{4}-u_{0}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)^{4}\right] \\
& \varphi_{2}(\tau, R)=10 \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}(\tau, R) u_{2}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)^{3} \\
& \varphi_{3}(\tau, R)=10 \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}(\tau, R) u_{2}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)^{2} \\
& \varphi_{4}(\tau, R)=5 \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}(\tau, R) u_{2}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right) \\
& \varphi_{5}(\tau, R)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}(\tau, R)
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{e}_{2}(\tau, \xi)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi) \chi\left(\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \frac{v \tau-R}{c}\right) R e_{2}\left(v \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right) d R \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 3.7 Solution of the transport equation

Our goal is to treat the entire right-hand side of Eq. (3.17) perturbatively. To this end it is necessary to be able to solve the two decoupled equations

$$
\begin{align*}
x_{d}^{\prime \prime}(\tau)+\xi_{d} x_{d}(\tau) & =b_{d}(\tau)  \tag{3.20}\\
{\left[\partial_{\tau}-\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(2 \xi \partial_{\xi}+\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right)\right]^{2} x(\tau, \xi)+\xi x(\tau, \xi) } & =b(\tau, \xi) \tag{3.21}
\end{align*}
$$

for some given functions $b_{d}$ and $b$. Recall that we are interested in decaying solutions as $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ and by variation of constants it is readily seen that

$$
x_{d}(\tau)=\int_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty} H_{d}\left(\tau, \tau^{\prime}\right) b_{d}\left(\tau^{\prime}\right) d \tau^{\prime}, \quad H_{d}\left(\tau, \tau^{\prime}\right):=-\frac{1}{2}\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2}\left|\tau-\tau^{\prime}\right|}
$$

for some constant $\tau_{0}$ is a solution to Eq. (3.20) which behaves well at infinity. For future reference we denote by $\mathcal{H}_{d}$ the solution operator, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{H}_{d} f(\tau):=\int_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty} H_{d}\left(\tau, \tau^{\prime}\right) f\left(\tau^{\prime}\right) d \tau^{\prime} \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to solve Eq. (3.21) we first define a new variable $y(\tau, \xi)$ by

$$
x(\tau, \xi)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} y(\tau, \xi)
$$

Then, by recalling that $\beta_{\nu}(\tau)=\tilde{\lambda}^{\prime}(\tau) \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1}$, we observe that

$$
\begin{gathered}
{\left[\partial_{\tau}-\frac{5}{2} \beta_{\nu}(\tau)-\beta_{\nu}(\tau)\left(2 \xi \partial_{\xi}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right)\right] x(\tau, \xi)} \\
\quad=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[\partial_{\tau}-2 \beta_{\nu}(\tau) \xi \partial_{\xi}\right] y(\tau, \xi)
\end{gathered}
$$

and thus, Eq. (3.21) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[\partial_{\tau}-2 \beta_{v}(\tau) \xi \partial_{\xi}\right]^{2} y(\tau, \xi)+\xi y(\tau, \xi)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{\frac{1}{2}} b(\tau, \xi) \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we solve Eq. (3.23) by the method of characteristics, i.e., we compute

$$
\frac{d}{d \tau} y(\tau, \xi(\tau))=\partial_{\tau} y(\tau, \xi(\tau))+\xi^{\prime}(\tau) \partial_{\xi} y(\tau, \xi(\tau))
$$

and by comparison with the differential operator in Eq. (3.23) we obtain the characteristic equation $\xi^{\prime}(\tau)=-2 \beta_{v}(\tau) \xi(\tau)$ which, by recalling that $\beta_{v}(\tau)=-\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right) \tau^{-1}$ from Eq. (3.4), is readily solved as $\xi(\tau)=\gamma \tau^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$ for some constant $\gamma$. Thus, along the characteristic $\tau \mapsto\left(\tau, \gamma \tau^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right)$, Eq. (3.23) takes the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{y}^{\prime \prime}(\tau ; \gamma)+\gamma \tau^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \tilde{y}(\tau ; \gamma)=\tilde{b}(\tau ; \gamma) \tag{3.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\tilde{y}(\tau ; \gamma)=y\left(\tau, \gamma \tau^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right)$ and $\tilde{b}(\tau ; \gamma)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-\frac{5}{2}} \rho\left(\gamma \tau^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} b\left(\tau, \gamma \tau^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right)$. By setting $\tilde{y}(\tau ; \gamma)=\tau^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} w\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right)$ we infer that the homogeneous version of Eq. (3.24) is equivalent to

$$
w^{\prime \prime}(z)+\left(1-\frac{\left(\frac{v}{2}\right)^{2}-\frac{1}{4}}{z^{2}}\right) w(z)=0
$$

where $z=v \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}$ and this identifies Eq. (3.24) as a Bessel equation. Consequently, a fundamental system $\left\{\phi_{j}(\cdot ; \gamma): j=0,1\right\}$ for the homogeneous version of Eq. (3.24) is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
& \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma)=a_{\nu} \tau^{\frac{1}{2}} J_{\nu / 2}\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right) \\
& \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma)=b_{\nu} \tau^{\frac{1}{2}} Y_{\nu / 2}\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right) \tag{3.25}
\end{align*}
$$

where $J_{v / 2}, Y_{\nu / 2}$ are the standard Bessel functions, see e.g. [35,36], and $a_{v}, b_{v}$ are chosen such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{v} J_{v / 2}(z)=v^{-\frac{v}{2}} z^{\frac{\nu}{2}}\left[1+O\left(z^{2}\right)\right], \quad b_{v} Y_{\nu / 2}(z)=v^{\frac{\nu}{2}} z^{-\frac{\nu}{2}}\left[1+O\left(z^{\nu}\right)\right] \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

as $z \rightarrow 0+$. This yields the asymptotics

$$
\begin{align*}
& \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma)=\gamma^{\frac{v}{4}} \tau\left[1+O\left(\gamma \tau^{\frac{2}{v}}\right)\right]  \tag{3.27}\\
& \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma)=\gamma^{-\frac{v}{4}}\left[1+O\left(\gamma^{\frac{v}{2}} \tau\right)\right]
\end{align*}
$$

for, say, $0<\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}} \leq 1$ and the $O$-terms behave like symbols. By evaluation at $\tau=0$ we also obtain the Wronskian $W\left(\phi_{0}(\cdot ; \gamma), \phi_{1}(\cdot ; \gamma)\right)=-1$. Furthermore, from the Hankel asymptotics we have $\left|H_{\nu / 2}^{(j)}(z)\right| \lesssim z^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ for $z \geq 1, j=1,2$ (see $[35,36]$ ) and thus, the relations $J_{v / 2}=\frac{1}{2}\left(H_{v / 2}^{(1)}+H_{v / 2}^{(2)}\right)$ as well as $Y_{\nu / 2}=\frac{1}{2 i}\left(H_{v / 2}^{(1)}-H_{v / 2}^{(2)}\right)$ immediately yield the bound

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\phi_{j}(\tau ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{4}} \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}, \quad j=0,1 \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}} \geq 1$. Consequently, assuming sufficient decay of $\tilde{b}(\cdot ; \gamma)$, a decaying solution to Eq. (3.24) is given by

$$
\tilde{y}(\tau ; \gamma)=\int_{\tau}^{\infty}\left[\phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{0}(\sigma ; \gamma)-\phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right] \tilde{b}(\sigma ; \gamma) d \sigma .
$$

In order to obtain an expression for $x(\tau, \xi)$, we set $\gamma=\xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$ and this yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(\tau, \xi)=\int_{\tau}^{\infty} H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi) b\left(\sigma,\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right) d \sigma=: \mathcal{H}_{c} b(\tau, \xi) \tag{3.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{align*}
H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)= & \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[\phi_{1}\left(\tau ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \phi_{0}\left(\sigma ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right)\right. \\
& \left.-\phi_{0}\left(\tau ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \phi_{1}\left(\sigma ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right)\right] \tilde{\lambda}(\sigma)^{-\frac{5}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tag{3.30}
\end{align*}
$$

Now we establish bounds for $H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)$.
Lemma 3.8 The function $H_{c}$ defined by Eq. (3.30) satisfies the bounds

$$
\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \begin{cases}\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}} & \tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1, \sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1 \\ \tau^{\frac{1}{2}(1-\nu)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}(1+v)} & 0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1, \sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1 \\ \sigma & 0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1,0<\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1\end{cases}
$$

for all $1 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$ and $\xi>0$.

Proof Recall that $\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)=(\nu \tau)^{-\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$ and thus, $\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \tilde{\lambda}(\sigma)^{-\frac{5}{2}}=\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{5}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$. Furthermore, if $\xi \geq 1$ we have $|\rho(\xi)|^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}}$ by Lemma 3.6 and, if $\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi \geq 1$, we infer

$$
\left|\rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \lesssim \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}}\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi^{\frac{1}{4}} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}
$$

again by Lemma 3.6. Note that we always have $\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}$ regardless of the sign of $\frac{1}{v}-1$ since $1 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$ is assumed throughout this proof. If, on the other hand, $0<\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi \leq 1$ we obtain

$$
\left|\rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \lesssim \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|},|.| ~}
$$

since $|\rho(\xi)|^{\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}}$ for $0<\xi \leq 1$ by Lemma 3.4.
In the case $0<\xi \leq 1$ we have $|\rho(\xi)|^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim \xi^{\frac{1}{4}}$ and thus, either

$$
\left|\rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \lesssim \xi^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}
$$

or

$$
\left|\rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \lesssim \xi^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi^{\frac{1}{4}} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}
$$

by Lemma 3.6 depending on whether $0<\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi \leq 1$ or $\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi \geq 1$. We conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \tilde{\lambda}(\sigma)^{-\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\left.31 \frac{1}{v}-1 \right\rvert\,} \tag{3.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $1 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$ and $\xi>0$.
It remains to estimate the terms involving $\phi_{j}$. We have different asymptotic descriptions of $\phi_{j}(\tau ; \gamma)$ depending on whether $0<\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}} \leq 1$ or $\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}} \geq 1$. For $\gamma=\xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$ this distinction reads $0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ or $\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$. Thus, in principle we have to deal with the four cases
(1) $\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$ and $\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$
(2) $0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ and $\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$
(3) $0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ and $0<\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$
(4) $\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$ and $0<\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$.

However, since we are only interested in $\tau \leq \sigma$, case (4) is void.
(1) We use the bound from the Hankel asymptotics stated in Eq. (3.28) to obtain

$$
\left|\phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{\nu}-1\right)} \sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{\nu}-1\right)} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{\nu}-1\right|} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}
$$

by evaluation at $\gamma=\xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$. This bound is symmetric in $\tau$ and $\sigma$ and thus, by Eq. (3.31), we infer

$$
\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}
$$

(2) From Eqs. (3.27) and (3.28) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{0}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{4}(1+\nu)} \sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \\
& \left|\phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{4}(1-\nu)} \tau \sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{4}(1+\nu)} \sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| & \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \tau^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-v\right)} \sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}(1+\nu)} \\
& \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \tau^{\frac{1}{2}(1-v)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}(1+\nu)}
\end{aligned}
$$

by Eq. (3.31).
(3) Eq. (3.27) yields

$$
\left|\phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \tau
$$

and this implies $\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}(\tau+\sigma) \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \sigma$.

We shall also require bounds for the differentiated kernel

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{H}_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi):=\left[\partial_{\tau}-\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(2 \xi \partial_{\xi}+\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right)\right] H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi) \tag{3.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, as always, $\beta_{v}(\tau)=-\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right) \tau^{-1}$. These are established next.
Lemma 3.9 The differentiated kernel satisfies the bounds

$$
\left|\hat{H}_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \begin{cases}1 & \tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1, \sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1 \\ \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}(1-\nu)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}(1-\nu)} & 0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1, \sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1 \\ 1 & 0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1,0<\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1\end{cases}
$$

for all $1 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$ and $\xi>0$.

Proof Note that for any differentiable function $f$ of two variables we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& {\left[\partial_{\tau}-\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(2 \xi \partial_{\xi}+\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right)\right]\left(\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} f(\tau, \xi)\right)} \\
& \quad=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[\partial_{\tau}-2 \beta_{v}(\tau) \xi \partial_{\xi}\right] f(\tau, \xi) .
\end{aligned}
$$

By Eq. (3.30) and

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[\partial_{\tau}-2 \beta_{\nu}(\tau) \xi \partial_{\xi}\right] \phi_{j}\left(\tau ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) } & =\partial_{1} \phi_{j}\left(\tau ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \\
{\left[\partial_{\tau}-2 \beta_{\nu}(\tau) \xi \partial_{\xi}\right] \phi_{j}\left(\sigma ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) } & =0
\end{aligned}
$$

for $j=0,1$ we therefore obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{H}_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)= & \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{5}{2}} \rho(\xi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \partial_{1} \phi_{1}\left(\tau ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \phi_{0}\left(\sigma ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \\
& -\partial_{1} \phi_{0}\left(\tau ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \phi_{1}\left(\sigma ; \xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}\right) \tilde{\lambda}(\sigma)^{-\frac{5}{2}} \rho\left(\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

From Eq. (3.27) we immediately infer

$$
\begin{align*}
& \partial_{1} \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma)=\gamma^{\frac{v}{4}}\left[1+O\left(\gamma \tau^{\frac{2}{v}}\right)\right]  \tag{3.33}\\
& \partial_{1} \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma)=O\left(\gamma^{\frac{v}{4}}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

for $0<\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}} \leq 1$. Furthermore, since

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \partial_{1} \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma)=\frac{1}{2} \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}} a_{v} J_{\nu / 2}\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right)+\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}-\frac{1}{2}} a_{\nu} J_{\nu / 2}^{\prime}\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right) \\
& \partial_{1} \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma)=\frac{1}{2} \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}} b_{\nu} Y_{\nu / 2}\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right)+\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}-\frac{1}{2}} b_{\nu} Y_{\nu / 2}^{\prime}\left(\nu \gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

see Eq. (3.25), the identity $C_{\nu / 2}^{\prime}=\frac{1}{2}\left(C_{\nu / 2-1}-C_{\nu / 2+1}\right), C \in\{J, Y\}$ [36], and the asymptotics of the Hankel functions yield $\left|C_{\nu / 2}^{\prime}(z)\right| \lesssim z^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ for $z \gtrsim 1$ and thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{j}(\tau ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{4}} \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(1+\frac{1}{v}\right)}+\gamma^{\frac{1}{4}} \tau^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \lesssim \gamma^{\frac{1}{4}} \tau^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \tag{3.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $\gamma^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{\frac{1}{v}} \geq 1$ and $j=0,1$.
As in the proof of Lemma 3.8 we now distinguish three cases and we always assume $1 \leq \tau \leq \sigma$.
(1) If $\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$ and $\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$ we use Eqs. (3.28) and (3.34) to conclude

$$
\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{0}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right|+\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}
$$

which, by Eq. (3.31), implies $\left|\hat{H}_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}$.
(2) If $0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ and $\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$ we obtain

$$
\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{0}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right|+\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim \gamma^{-\frac{1}{4}(1-\nu)} \sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}
$$

by Eqs. (3.33) and (3.28). Hence, upon setting $\gamma=\xi \tau^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$, we conclude

$$
\left|\hat{H}_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \tau^{-\frac{1}{2}(1-\nu)} \xi^{-\frac{1}{4}(1-\nu)}
$$

(3) In the case $0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ and $0<\sigma \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ we have, by Eqs. (3.27) and (3.33),

$$
\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{1}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{0}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right|+\left|\partial_{1} \phi_{0}(\tau ; \gamma) \phi_{1}(\sigma ; \gamma)\right| \lesssim 1+\gamma^{\frac{\nu}{2}} \sigma \lesssim 1
$$

which yields $\left|\hat{H}_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{3\left|\frac{1}{\nu}-1\right|}$ by Eq. (3.31).

### 3.8 Estimates for the solution operator

In order to set up our main contraction argument for Eq. (3.17) we have to introduce appropriate function spaces.

Definition 3.10 For $\delta, \alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ and $p \in[1, \infty)$ we define norms $\|\cdot\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ and $\|\cdot\|_{Y p, \alpha}$ by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} & :=\left(\int_{0}^{\infty}\left|f(\xi)\left(\xi\langle\xi\rangle^{-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\right|^{p} d \xi\right)^{1 / p}+\left(\int_{0}^{\infty}|f(\xi)|^{2} \xi\langle\xi\rangle^{2 \alpha} \rho(\xi) d \xi\right)^{1 / 2} \\
\|f\|_{Y p, \alpha} & :=\|f\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)}+\left(\int_{0}^{\infty}|f(\xi)|^{2}\langle\xi\rangle^{2 \alpha} \rho(\xi) d \xi\right)^{1 / 2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Furthermore, for a function $b$ of two variables and a Banach space $X$ we write

$$
\|b\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta} X}:=\sup _{\tau \geq \tau_{0}} \tau^{\beta}\|b(\tau, \cdot)\|_{X}
$$

where $\beta \geq 0$ and $\tau_{0}>0$ (in what follows we always assume $\tau_{0}$ to be sufficiently large).

For the following it is convenient to introduce the notation

$$
\mathcal{B}_{c, v} b(\tau, \xi):=\left[\partial_{\tau}-\beta_{\nu}(\tau)\left(2 \xi \partial_{\xi}+\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right)\right] b(\tau, \xi) .
$$

Proposition 3.11 Fix a $\delta$ with $2\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|<\delta<\frac{1}{2}$ and let $p \in(1, \infty)$ be so large that

$$
p^{\prime}\left(1-\delta+2\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|\right)<1
$$

where $p^{\prime}$ is the Hölder conjugate of $p$, i.e., $\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{p^{\prime}}=1$. Suppose further that $\tau_{0} \geq 1$, $\beta \geq \frac{5}{2}$ and $\alpha \in[0,1]$ be fixed. Then we have the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{H}_{c} b\right\|_{L_{0}, \beta-1-2 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha} & \lesssim\|b\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta} Y^{p, \alpha}} \\
\left\|\mathcal{B}_{c, v} \mathcal{H}_{c} b\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta-1}{ }_{Y}{ }^{p, \alpha}} & \lesssim b \|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta}{ }_{Y}{ }^{p, \alpha}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof Let $q \in(1, \infty)$. By Hölder's inequality we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\mathcal{H}_{c} b(\tau, \xi)\right| & \leq \int_{\tau}^{\infty}\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi) b\left(\sigma,\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)\right| d \sigma \\
& \leq A_{\mu, q^{\prime}}(\tau, \xi)\left(\int_{\tau}^{\infty}\left|\sigma^{\mu} b\left(\sigma,\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)\right|^{q} d \sigma\right)^{1 / q}
\end{aligned}
$$

with $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ and

$$
A_{\mu, q^{\prime}}(\tau, \xi):=\left(\int_{\tau}^{\infty}\left|\sigma^{-\mu} H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right|^{q^{\prime}} d \sigma\right)^{1 / q^{\prime}}
$$

We claim that

$$
A_{\mu, q^{\prime}}(\tau, \xi) \lesssim \begin{cases}\tau^{-\mu+\frac{1}{q^{\prime}} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}} & \tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1  \tag{3.35}\\ \tau^{-\mu+\frac{1}{q^{\prime}}+1} & 0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1\end{cases}
$$

provided that $\mu>1+\frac{1}{q^{\prime}}+5\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|$. Indeed, if $\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \geq 1$ we have from Lemma 3.8 the bound $\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\frac{7}{2}}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right| \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ and this implies the first estimate in Eq. (3.35). In order to prove the second bound in Eq. (3.35) we use $\left|H_{c}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)\right| \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{5\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \sigma$ from Lemma 3.8 which yields $A_{\mu, q^{\prime}}(\tau, \xi) \lesssim \tau^{-\mu+\frac{1}{q^{\prime}+1}}$ in the case $0<\tau \xi^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq 1$ as claimed.

Now note that Eq. (3.35) implies

$$
A_{\mu, q^{\prime}}(\tau, \xi) \lesssim \tau^{-\mu+\frac{1}{q^{\prime}}+2 \delta} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta} \lesssim \tau^{-\mu+\frac{1}{q^{\prime}}+2 \delta}\left(\xi\langle\xi\rangle^{-1}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta}
$$

for all $\xi>0$ and thus, by interchanging the order of integration, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\mathcal{H}_{c} b(\tau, \xi)\left(\xi\langle\xi\rangle^{-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\right|^{p} d \xi \\
& \quad \lesssim \int_{\tau}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|A_{\mu, p^{\prime}}(\tau, \xi)\left(\xi\langle\xi\rangle^{-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\right|^{p}\left|\sigma^{\mu} b\left(\sigma,\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} \xi\right)\right|^{p} d \xi d \sigma \\
& \quad \lesssim \tau^{p\left(-\mu+\frac{1}{p^{+}}+2 \delta+2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)\right)} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\sigma^{\mu-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)} b(\sigma, \eta)\right|^{p} d \eta d \sigma
\end{aligned}
$$

Now we set $\mu=\beta-\delta$ which is admissible since $\beta-\delta>1+\frac{1}{p^{\prime}}+5\left|\frac{1}{\nu}-1\right|$ provided $v$ is sufficiently close to 1 which we may safely assume. Hence, we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\mathcal{H}_{c} b(\tau, \xi)\left(\xi\langle\xi\rangle^{-1}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\right|^{p} d \xi \\
& \quad \lesssim \tau^{p\left(-\beta+\frac{1}{p^{\prime}}+3 \delta+2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)\right)}\|b\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta} L^{p}(0, \infty)}^{p} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} \sigma^{-p\left(\delta+2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)\right)} d \sigma \\
& \quad \lesssim \tau^{p(-\beta+1+2 \delta)}\|b\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty}, \beta}^{p} Y^{p, \alpha}
\end{aligned}
$$

where the last step is justified since $1-\delta-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)<\frac{1}{p^{\prime}}=1-\frac{1}{p}$ and this implies $-p\left(\delta+2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)\right)<-1$.

For the $L^{2}$ based part in $\|\cdot\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ we proceed similarly and obtain from Eq. (3.35) the bound $A_{\mu, 2}(\tau, \xi) \lesssim \tau^{-\mu+\frac{1}{2}} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ for all $\xi>0$. This shows

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\mathcal{H}_{c} b(\tau, \xi)\right|^{2} \xi\langle\xi\rangle^{2 \alpha} \rho(\xi) d \xi \\
& \quad \lesssim \tau^{2\left(-\mu+\frac{1}{2}\right)} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\sigma^{\mu} b\left(\sigma, \omega(\tau, \sigma)^{-1} \xi\right)\right|^{2}\langle\xi\rangle^{2 \alpha} \rho(\xi) d \xi d \sigma \\
& =\tau^{2\left(-\mu+\frac{1}{2}\right)} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\sigma^{\mu} b(\sigma, \eta)\right|^{2}\langle\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta\rangle^{2 \alpha} \omega(\tau, \sigma) \rho(\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta) d \eta d \sigma
\end{aligned}
$$

where we write $\omega(\tau, \sigma)=\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{-2\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right)}$. We clearly have $\langle\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta\rangle^{2 \alpha} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{4\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}$ $\langle\eta\rangle^{2 \alpha}$ for all $\eta>0$ and also, $\omega(\tau, \rho) \rho(\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta) \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \rho(\eta)$ provided that $\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta \geq 1$, cf. Lemma 3.6. In the case $0<\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta \leq 1$, Lemma 3.4 implies

$$
\omega(\tau, \sigma) \rho(\omega(\tau, \sigma) \eta) \lesssim \omega(\tau, \sigma)^{\frac{1}{2}} \eta^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lesssim\left(\frac{\sigma}{\tau}\right)^{\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \rho(\eta) .
$$

Consequently, by choosing $\mu=\beta-\frac{5}{8}$ we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\mathcal{H}_{c} b(\tau, \xi)\right|^{2} \xi\langle\xi\rangle^{2 \alpha} \rho(\xi) d \xi & \lesssim \tau^{2\left(-\beta+\frac{9}{8}-\frac{7}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|\right)}\|b\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta} Y^{p, \alpha}} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} \sigma^{-\frac{5}{4}+7\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} d \sigma \\
& \lesssim \tau^{2(-\beta+1)}\|b\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta} Y^{p, \alpha}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and this finishes the proof of the first estimate.
For the second bound note that the operator $\mathcal{B}_{c, \nu} \mathcal{H}_{c}$ has the kernel $\hat{H}(\tau, \sigma, \xi)$ from Lemma 3.9 and based on the bounds given there it is straightforward to prove the claimed estimate by repeating the above arguments.

It is also an easy exercise to prove an appropriate bound for the discrete part $\mathcal{H}_{d}$.
Lemma 3.12 Let $\beta>0$ and suppose $b_{d} \in L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta}$. Then

$$
\left\|\mathcal{H}_{d} b_{d}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta}} \lesssim\left\|b_{d}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta}}, \quad\left\|\left(\mathcal{H}_{d} b_{d}\right)^{\prime}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty}}^{\infty, \beta} \lesssim\left\|b_{d}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta}}
$$

Proof By definition (Eq. (3.22)) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{H}_{d} b_{d}(\tau)= & -\frac{1}{2}\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{-\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2} \tau} \int_{\tau_{0}}^{\tau} e^{\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2} \sigma} b_{d}(\sigma) d \sigma \\
& -\frac{1}{2}\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2} \tau} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} e^{-\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2} \sigma} b_{d}(\sigma) d \sigma \\
= & I_{1}(\tau)+I_{2}(\tau) .
\end{aligned}
$$

It is evident that $\left|I_{2}(\tau)\right| \lesssim\langle\tau\rangle^{-\beta}$ and in order to estimate $I_{1}(\tau)$ we note that

$$
\left|I_{1}(\tau)\right| \lesssim \sup _{\sigma>\tau_{0}} \sigma^{\beta}\left|b_{d}(\sigma)\right| e^{-\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2} \tau} \int_{\tau_{0}}^{\tau} e^{\left|\xi_{d}\right|^{1 / 2} \sigma} \sigma^{-\beta} d \sigma
$$

and the first assertion follows by performing one integration by parts. The proof of the second bound is identical.

## 4 Estimates for the nonlinear and inhomogeneous terms

We provide estimates (in terms of the spaces in Definition 3.10) for the various contributions on the right-hand side of our main equation (3.17) that do not involve the operator $\mathcal{K}$ from the transference identity. Thus, this section is mainly concerned with
the nonlinear contributions. In order to treat the nonlinearity, we first discuss mapping properties of the distorted Fourier transform $\mathcal{F}$. These allow us to transfer the problem to the physical side where the nonlinearity can be estimated using standard tools. The main ingredients are basic inequalities and interpolation theory of Sobolev spaces as well as the fractional Leibniz rule. As a consequence, we infer the crucial contraction property of the nonlinearity on our spaces.

### 4.1 The inhomogeneous term

We start with the inhomogeneous term $\hat{e}_{2}$ as defined in Eq. (3.19).
Lemma 4.1 For any fixed $\epsilon>0$ we have

$$
\hat{e}_{2} \in L^{\infty, 3-\epsilon-3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} Y^{p, \alpha}, \quad \hat{e}_{2}\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right) \in L^{\infty, 3-\epsilon-3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}
$$

for all $p>1$ and $\alpha \in\left[0, \frac{1}{4}\right)$.
Proof We distinguish between $\xi \lesssim 1$ (including $\xi=\xi_{d}$ ) and $\xi \gtrsim 1$. If $\xi \lesssim 1$ we have from Corollary 3.7 the bound $|\phi(R, \xi)| \lesssim 1$ and from Lemma 2.3 we recall

$$
\left|\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} e_{2}\left(v \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)\right| \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-4+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}\langle R\rangle^{-1}
$$

in the truncated cone $r \leq t-c$ which corresponds to $R \leq \nu \tau-\tilde{\lambda}(\tau) c$. Thus, by Eq. (3.19) we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\hat{e}_{2}(\tau, \xi)\right| & \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-4+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \int_{0}^{\infty} \chi\left(\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \frac{\nu \tau-R}{c}\right) d R \\
& \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-4+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \int_{0}^{\tau} d R \lesssim \tau^{-3+\epsilon+3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|}
\end{aligned}
$$

by recalling that $\tilde{\lambda}(\tau) \simeq \tau^{-\left(\frac{1}{\nu}-1\right)}$ since the cut-off localizes to the lightcone $R \leq \nu \tau \lesssim \tau$. If $\xi \gtrsim 1$ we use

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \phi(R, \xi)=O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right) e^{i \sqrt{\xi} R}\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\langle R\rangle^{-3} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\right]+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right) e^{-i \sqrt{\xi} R} \\
& \quad\left[1+O_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\langle R\rangle^{-3} \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

with symbol behavior of all $O$-terms (Lemma 3.5 and Corollary 3.7) and perform one integration by parts to obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\hat{e}_{2}(\tau, \xi)\right| & \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-4+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \xi^{-1} \int_{0}^{\tau}\langle R\rangle^{-1} d R \\
& +\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-4+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \xi^{-1} \int_{0}^{\infty}\left|\chi^{\prime}\left(\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \frac{v \tau-R}{c}\right)\right| d R \\
& \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-3+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \xi^{-1}+\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-4+\epsilon+\frac{5}{2}\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \xi^{-1} \int_{\nu \tau-\tilde{\lambda}(\tau) c}^{\nu \tau-\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\lambda}(\tau) c} d R \\
& \lesssim \tau^{-3+\epsilon+3\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|} \xi^{-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 4.2 Mapping properties of $\mathcal{F}$

It is of fundamental importance to understand the action of the distorted Fourier transform on the spaces $X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}$. In the following we use the standard Sobolev spaces $W^{s, p}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ and in order to make sense of $\|f\|_{W^{s, p}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ for a function $f:[0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$, we identify $f$ with the radial function $x \mapsto f(|x|)$ on $\mathbb{R}^{3}$. In this sense we have, for instance, $\|f\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)} \simeq\left\||\cdot|^{-1} f\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$. Note that if $f:[0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is smooth and $f^{(2 k-1)}(0)=0$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$ then $x \mapsto f(|x|)$ is a smooth function on $\mathbb{R}^{3}$. To begin with, we write

$$
\|f\|_{L_{\rho}^{2, \alpha}}^{2}:=\int_{0}^{\infty}|f(\xi)|^{2}\langle\xi\rangle^{2 \alpha} \rho(\xi) d \xi
$$

and recall a fundamental result from [27].
Lemma 4.2 Let $\alpha \geq 0$. Then

$$
\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \alpha}} \simeq\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a, f)\right\|_{H^{2 \alpha}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

for all $(a, f) \in \mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \alpha}$ or, equivalently,

$$
\|\mathcal{F}(|\cdot| g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \alpha}} \simeq\|g\|_{H^{2 \alpha}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

for all radial $g \in H^{2 \alpha}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$.
Proof This is a consequence of the unitarity of $\mathcal{U}$, see [27].
Lemma 4.3 Fix a small $\delta>0$ and let $p \geq 1$ be so large that $p^{\prime}(1-\delta)<1$. Furthermore, denote by $\chi$ a smooth cut-off function which satisfies $\chi(\xi)=0$ for $\xi \in[0,1]$ and $\chi(\xi)=1$ for $\xi \geq 2$. Then, for any $\alpha \geq 0$, the following estimates hold:
(1) $\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a, \chi f)\right\|_{H^{2 \alpha+1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$,
(2) $\left\|\mathcal{F}^{-1}(a,(1-\chi) f)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$,
(3) $\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a,(1-\chi) f)\right\|_{L^{q}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ for any $q \in(3, \infty]$,
(4) $\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a,(1-\chi) f)\right\|_{\dot{W}}{ }^{2 \theta,} \frac{2}{\theta+\frac{2}{q}(1-\theta)}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$. $\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ for any $q \in(3, \infty)$ and $\theta \in[0,1]$.

Proof Recall that $\mathcal{F}^{-1}(a, f)$ is given by

$$
\mathcal{F}^{-1}(a, f)=a \frac{\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}}+\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(\cdot, \xi) f(\xi) \rho(\xi) d \xi .
$$

Since $|\cdot|^{-1} \phi\left(|\cdot|, \xi_{d}\right) \in C^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ with exponential decay towards infinity, the estimates for the discrete part follow immediately. Thus, we focus on the integral term.
(1) By Lemma 4.2 it suffices to note that

$$
\|\chi f\|_{L_{\rho}^{2, \alpha+1 / 2}} \lesssim\|\chi f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} .
$$

(2) By Corollary 3.7 we have $|\phi(R, \xi)| \lesssim 1$ for all $R, \xi \geq 0$ and thus, Hölder's inequality yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi)[1-\chi(\xi)] f(\xi) \rho(\xi) d \xi\right| \\
& \quad \lesssim\left(\int_{0}^{2}\left|f(\xi) \xi^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\right|^{p} d \xi\right)^{1 / p}\left(\int_{0}^{2}\left|\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta} \rho(\xi)\right|^{p^{\prime}} d \xi\right)^{1 / p^{\prime}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and the right-hand side of this inequality is finite and controlled by $\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ since $\left|\rho(\xi) \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta}\right| \lesssim \xi^{-1+\delta}$ for $\xi \in(0,2)$ (Lemma 3.4) and $p^{\prime}(-1+\delta)>-1$ by assumption on $p$.
(3) From Lemma 3.2 and Corollary 3.7 we obtain

$$
\sup _{\xi \in(0,2)}\left|\frac{\phi(R, \xi)}{R}\right| \lesssim\langle R\rangle^{-1}
$$

for all $R \geq 0$ and by repeating the argument in (2) this implies

$$
\left|R^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a,(1-\chi) f)(R)\right| \lesssim\langle R\rangle^{-1}\|(a,(1-\chi) f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

which yields

$$
\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a,(1-\chi) f)\right\|_{L^{q}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|(a,(1-\chi) f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

for any $q \in(3, \infty]$.
(4) From Lemma 4.2 we have

$$
\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}(a,(1-\chi) f)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|(a,(1-\chi) f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

and the claim follows from this and (3) by complex interpolation since $\left[L^{q}, \dot{H}^{2}\right]_{\theta}=\dot{W}^{2 \theta, \frac{2}{\theta+\frac{2}{q}(1-\theta)}}$, see [3].

### 4.3 The operator $\mathcal{N}_{1}$

In order to estimate the operator $\mathcal{N}_{1}$, defined in Eq. (3.18), we first prove the following auxiliary result.

Lemma 4.4 Let $p, \delta$ be as in Lemma 4.3 and let $\varphi:[0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a function satisfying

$$
\left|\varphi^{(k)}(R)\right| \leq C_{k}\langle R\rangle^{-\gamma-k}
$$

for some $\gamma>\frac{3}{2}$ and all $R \geq 0, k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. Then $\varphi \in H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ and there exists a small $\epsilon>0$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|\mathcal{F}(|\cdot| \varphi g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim & {\left[\|\varphi\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\|\varphi\|_{L^{1}(0, \infty)}\right]\left[\left\||\cdot| g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)}\right.} \\
& +\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W}^{\frac{1}{4}}, 16-\epsilon}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \\
& \left.+\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $g=g_{-}+g_{+}$where $g_{-}$and $g_{+}$belong to the respective spaces on the right-hand side.

Proof Note first that $\varphi \in L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$. Furthermore, we have

$$
\partial_{k} \partial_{j} \varphi(|x|)=\varphi^{\prime \prime}(|x|) \frac{x_{j} x_{k}}{|x|^{2}}+\varphi^{\prime}(|x|)\left[\frac{\delta_{j k}}{|x|}-\frac{x_{j} x_{k}}{|x|^{3}}\right]
$$

and thus, $\left|\partial_{k} \partial_{j} \varphi(|x|)\right| \lesssim|x|^{-1}\langle x\rangle^{-\gamma-1}$ which implies $\varphi \in H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$. Now recall that

$$
\mathcal{F}(\varphi g)=\binom{\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right) \varphi(R) g(R) d R}{\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \cdot) \varphi(R) g(R) d R}
$$

and $\|\cdot\|_{Y^{p, \alpha}} \simeq\|\cdot\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)}+\|\cdot\|_{L_{\rho}^{2, \alpha}}$. We proceed in four steps, estimating each component separately.
(1) We note the estimate

$$
\|u v\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} \lesssim\|u\|_{H^{\frac{7}{8}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)^{3}}\|v\|_{H^{\frac{7}{8}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

which is a consequence of the fractional Leibniz rule ([48], p. 105, Proposition 1.1)

$$
\|u v\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} \lesssim\|u\|_{L^{\frac{24}{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}\|v\|_{W^{\frac{1}{4}} \cdot \frac{24}{7}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\|v\|_{L^{\frac{24}{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}\|u\|_{W^{\frac{1}{4}}, \frac{24}{7}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

and the Sobolev embeddings $H^{\frac{7}{8}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{\frac{24}{5}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right), H^{\frac{7}{8}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow W^{\frac{1}{4}, \frac{24}{7}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$. With these preparations at hand we immediately conclude from Lemma 4.2 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi g_{+}\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \frac{1}{8}}} & \simeq\left\|\varphi g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{H^{\frac{7}{8}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{7}{8}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

(2) In order to estimate the $L^{p}$-part of $g_{+}$note first that $|\phi(R, \xi)| \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ for all $R \geq 0$ by Lemmas 3.2, 3.3, 3.5 and Corollary 3.7. This yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi g_{+}\right)\right]_{2}(\xi)\right| & \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\|\varphi\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}\left\||\cdot| g_{+}\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)} \\
& \simeq\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\|\varphi\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\|\varphi\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

by noting that $\|\varphi\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\|\varphi\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$. By raising the above inequality to the power $p>2$ we conclude

$$
\left\|\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi g_{+}\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

(3) In order to estimate the $L^{p}$-norm of the second component we note, as in (2),

$$
\left|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi g_{-}\right)\right]_{2}(\xi)\right| \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\|\varphi\|_{L^{1}(0, \infty)}\left\||\cdot| g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)}
$$

and therefore,

$$
\left\|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi g_{-}\right)\right]_{2}\right\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{L^{1}(0, \infty)}\left\||\cdot| g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)}
$$

provided that $p>2$.
(4) For the $L^{2}$-part of $g_{-}$we use Lemma 4.2 again and obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi g_{-}\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \frac{1}{8}}} & \simeq\left\|\varphi g_{-}\right\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& \simeq\left\|\varphi g_{-}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\left\|\varphi g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that

$$
\left\|\varphi g_{-}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)}
$$

and it remains to bound the $\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}}$-norm. For this we use the fractional Leibniz rule and obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\varphi g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\|\varphi\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)} \\
& +\|\varphi\|_{L^{\frac{16}{7}}{ }_{\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W}}{ }^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-}{ }_{\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}
\end{aligned}
$$

and this yields the claim since $H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{\frac{16}{7}}+\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ by Sobolev embedding.

Now we are ready to establish the crucial estimate for the operator $\mathcal{N}_{1}$, cf. Eq. (3.18).

Lemma 4.5 Let $p, \delta$ be as in Lemma 4.3 and $\beta_{d}, \beta_{c} \geq 0$. Then we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{N}_{1}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}+2} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}+2} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} .
$$

Proof Recall from Eq. (3.18) that

$$
\mathcal{N}_{1}\left(x_{d}, x\right)(\tau, \xi)=\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi_{1}(\tau, \cdot)|\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right)(\xi)
$$

with
$\varphi_{1}(\tau, R)=5 \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2} \tilde{\chi}(\tau, R)\left[u_{2}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)^{4}-u_{0}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)^{4}\right]$.
Furthermore, we have $u_{2}=u_{0}+v_{0}+v_{1}$ with $v_{0}$ and $v_{1}$ from Lemmas 2.2 and 2.3, respectively. Now note that

$$
u_{2}^{4}-u_{0}^{4}=4 u_{0}^{3} v+6 u_{0}^{2} v^{2}+4 u_{0} v^{3}+v^{4}
$$

where $v:=v_{0}+v_{1}$ and from Lemmas 2.2 and 2.3 as well as the definition of $u_{0}$ we have the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|v\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)\right| & \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}} \tau^{-2}\langle R\rangle \\
\left|u_{0}\left(\nu \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} \tau, \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-1} R\right)\right| & \lesssim \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle R\rangle^{-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

for $R \leq \nu \tau-\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\lambda}(\tau) c$ which imply

$$
\left|\varphi_{1}(\tau, R)\right| \lesssim \tau^{-2}\langle R\rangle^{-2} .
$$

We also have $\left|\partial_{R}^{k} \varphi_{1}(\tau, R)\right| \leq C_{k} \tau^{-2}\langle R\rangle^{-2-k}$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$ and this implies

$$
\left\|\varphi_{1}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\left\|\varphi_{1}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{1}(0, \infty)} \lesssim \tau^{-2}
$$

cf. Lemma 4.4.
For given $\left(x_{d}, x\right) \in L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$ we now set

$$
y(\tau, R):=R^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)(R),
$$

i.e., we have $\mathcal{N}_{1}\left(x_{d}, x\right)(\tau, \xi)=\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi_{1}(\tau, \cdot) y(\tau, \cdot)\right)(\xi)$ and obviously, our goal is to apply Lemma 4.4. According to Lemma 4.3 we have a decomposition $y=y_{-}+y_{+}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|y_{+}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} & \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
\left\|\mid \cdot y_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)} & \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
\left\|y_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0, \infty)} & \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
\left\|y_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{\dot{W} \frac{1}{4}, 16-\epsilon} & \lesssim \|\left(\mathbb{R}_{d}\right) \\
& \left.\lesssim x_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

with the $\epsilon$ from Lemma 4.4. Consequently, Lemma 4.4 indeed applies and yields

$$
\left\|\mathcal{N}_{1}\left(x_{d}, x\right)(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim \tau^{-2}\left\|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

which implies the claim.

### 4.4 The operator $\mathcal{N}_{5}$

Next, we study the operator $\mathcal{N}_{5}$. As before, we start with an auxiliary estimate that does not take into account the time dependence.

Lemma 4.6 Let $p, \delta$ be as in Lemma 4.3. Then there exists a small $\epsilon>0$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g^{5}\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5} \\
& \quad+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W}^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-\epsilon}}^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \\
& +\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $g=g_{-}+g_{+}$such that the right-hand side is finite.
Proof We have $g^{5}=\left(g_{-}+g_{+}\right)^{5}=g_{-}^{5}+\cdots+g_{+}^{5}$ and study the extreme cases $g_{-}^{5}$ and $g_{+}^{5}$ first. The intermediate terms are then estimated by interpolation. Let us note
the estimate

$$
\left\|\prod_{j=1}^{5} f_{j}\right\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} \lesssim \sum_{j=1}^{5}\left\|f_{j}\right\|_{W^{\frac{1}{4}, 6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \prod_{\ell \neq j}\left\|f_{\ell}\right\|_{L^{12}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

which is a consequence of the fractional Leibniz rule ([48], p. 105, Proposition 1.1). By the Sobolev embeddings $H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{12}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ and $H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow W^{\frac{1}{4}, 6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ we infer

$$
\left\|\prod_{j=1}^{5} f_{j}\right\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim \prod_{j=1}^{5}\left\|f_{j}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

which will be useful in the following.
(1) According to Lemma 4.2 we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{+}^{5}\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \frac{1}{8}}} \simeq\left\|g_{+}^{5}\right\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} \lesssim\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}^{5} .
$$

(2) In order to estimate the $L^{p}$-part of $g_{+}$recall that $|\phi(R, \xi)| \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ for all $R \geq 0$ and thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{+}^{5}\right)\right]_{2}(\xi)\right| \lesssim & \|\phi(\cdot, \xi)\|_{L^{2}(0,1)}\left\||\cdot| g_{+}^{5}\right\|_{L^{2}(0,1)} \\
& +\left\||\cdot|^{-1} \phi(\cdot, \xi)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(1, \infty)}\left\||\cdot|^{2} g_{+}^{5}\right\|_{L^{1}(1, \infty)} \\
\lesssim & \langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left(\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{L^{10}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}+\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Consequently, the Sobolev embeddings $H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{10}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ and $H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow$ $L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ yield

$$
\left\|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{+}^{5}\right)\right]_{2}\right\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}
$$

for $p>2$ as desired.
(3) For the $L^{p}$-part of $g_{-}$note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{-}^{5}\right)\right]_{2}(\xi)\right| & \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[\left\|g_{-}^{5}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0,1)}+\left\||\cdot|^{2} g_{-}^{5}\right\|_{L^{1}(1, \infty)}\right] \\
& \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

which yields the desired bound

$$
\left\|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{-}^{5}\right)\right]_{2}\right\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}
$$

provided that $p>2$.
(4) According to Lemma 4.3 we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{-}^{5}\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times L_{\rho}^{2, \frac{1}{8}}} \simeq\left\|g_{-}^{5}\right\|_{H^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

and since $\left\|g_{-}^{5}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{10}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5} \lesssim\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5}$ it suffices to control the homogeneous Sobolev norm $\left\|g_{-}^{5}\right\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}$. For this we use the fractional Leibniz rule to conclude

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|g_{-}^{5}\right\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\frac{64}{7}+}{ }_{\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{4}}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W}^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& \lesssim\left[\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{4}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{4}\right]\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W}^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-}}{ }_{\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} .
\end{aligned}
$$

We briefly comment on how to estimate the mixed terms. First of all, it is trivial to bound the $L^{p}$ norms since

$$
\left|\left[\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| g_{-}^{5-k} g_{+}^{k}\right)\right]_{2}(\xi)\right| \lesssim \int_{0}^{\infty}|\phi(R, \xi)| R\left[\left|g_{-}(R)\right|^{5}+\left|g_{+}(R)\right|^{5}\right] d R
$$

for all $k \in\{1,2,3,4\}$ by the pointwise inequality $\left|g_{-}^{5-k} g_{+}^{k}\right| \lesssim\left|g_{-}\right|^{5}+\left|g_{+}\right|^{5}$ which brings us back to the two extreme cases considered above. For the $L^{2}$-parts the only nontrivial contributions come from the $\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ homogeneous Sobolev norms. In order to control these, one proceeds as before by applying the fractional Leibniz rule followed by Sobolev embedding, i.e.,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|g_{-}^{5-k} g_{+}^{k}\right\|_{\dot{H}^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5-k}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{L^{3(k-1)}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{k-1}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{\dot{W}^{\frac{1}{4}, 6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& +\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{L^{k \frac{16}{7}}+\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{k}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{4-k}\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W}^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-}}{ }_{\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& \lesssim\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{5-k}\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}^{k}+\left\|g_{-}\right\|_{\dot{W^{4}}}^{5-k}{ }^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)},\left\|g_{+}\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}}^{k} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Lemma 4.7 Let $p, \delta$ be as in Lemma 4.3 and $\beta_{d}, \beta_{c} \geq 0$. Then we have the estimate

$$
\left\|\mathcal{N}_{5}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 5 \beta_{d}-\frac{1}{4}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 5 \beta_{c}-\frac{1}{4}} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}^{5} .
$$

Proof Recall that

$$
\mathcal{N}_{5}\left(x_{d}, x\right)(\tau, \xi)=\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot| \varphi_{5}(\tau, \cdot)\left[|\cdot|^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right]^{5}\right)(\xi)
$$

and by setting $y(\tau, R):=R^{-1} \mathcal{F}\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)(\xi)$ we obtain from Lemma 4.3 the existence of a decomposition $y=y_{-}+y_{+}$with the bound

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|y_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{5}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\left\|y_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\left\|y_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{\dot{W} W^{\frac{1}{4}, 16-\epsilon}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \\
& \quad \lesssim \|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot) \|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

as well as

$$
\left\|y_{+}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

for any (small) $\epsilon>0$. Thus, since $\left|\partial_{R}^{k} \varphi_{5}(\tau, R)\right| \leq C_{k} \tilde{\lambda}(\tau)^{-2-k} \lesssim \tau^{\frac{1}{4}}$ for bounded $k$, Lemma 4.6 yields

$$
\left\|\mathcal{N}_{5}\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim \tau^{\frac{1}{4}}\left\|\left(x_{d}(\tau), x(\tau, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}^{5}
$$

which implies the claim.
Remark 4.8 The loss of $\tau^{\frac{1}{4}}$ in Lemma 4.7 can be improved to $\tau^{\epsilon}$ with $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$ as $v \rightarrow 1$ but the stated result suffices for our purposes and it avoids the introduction of an additional $\epsilon$.

The remaining operators $\mathcal{N}_{2}, \mathcal{N}_{3}, \mathcal{N}_{4}$ are in a certain sense interpolates between $\mathcal{N}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{N}_{5}$ and can be treated in the exact same fashion. Note that we do not gain additional decay in $\tau$ from the $\varphi_{j}$ factors because they involve the (rescaled) soliton $u_{0}$ which does not decay. In fact, from $\varphi_{j}$ we may even have a loss of $\tau^{\epsilon}$ (with $\epsilon \rightarrow 0+$ as $v \rightarrow 1$ ) depending on the sign of $1-v$. Consequently, the gain comes exclusively from the nonlinearity, as is the case for the operator $\mathcal{N}_{5}$. We only state the corresponding result and leave the verification to the reader.

Lemma 4.9 Let $p, \delta$ be as in Lemma 4.3 and $\beta_{d}, \beta_{c} \geq 0$. Then we have the estimate

$$
\left\|\mathcal{N}_{j}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, j \beta_{d}-\frac{1}{4}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, j \beta_{c}-\frac{1}{4}} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}^{j}
$$

for $j \in\{2,3,4\}$.
Furthermore, by basically repeating the above computations and using elementary identities such as

$$
a^{n}-b^{n}=(a-b) \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} a^{j} b^{n-1-j}
$$

it is straightforward to see that we have the following estimate for the operator $\mathcal{N}:=$ $\sum_{j=1}^{5} \mathcal{N}_{j}$.

Lemma 4.10 Let $p, \delta$ be as in Lemma 4.3 and $\beta_{d}, \beta_{c} \geq \frac{3}{2}$. Then there exists a continuous function $\gamma:[0, \infty) \times[0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\mathcal{N}\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\mathcal{N}\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}+\frac{5}{4}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}+\frac{5}{4}} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \leq \gamma(X, Y) \|\left(x_{d}, x\right) \\
& \quad-\left(y_{d}, y\right) \|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
X:=\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{d}} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}, \quad Y:=\left\|\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty}, \beta_{d} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, \beta_{c}} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} .
$$

## 5 Estimates for the terms involving $\mathcal{K}$ and $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]$

Finally, we consider the terms on the right-hand side of Eq. (3.17) which come from the transference identity. The main results in this respect are summarized in the following proposition.

Proposition 5.1 (Estimates for the $\mathcal{K}$-operators) Let $\delta>0$ be small and assume $p \in(1, \infty)$ to be so large that $p^{\prime}(1-\delta)<1$. Then we have the estimates

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \|\mathcal{K}(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}\|[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}](a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
& \|\mathcal{K}(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}\|[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}](a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
& \|\mathcal{K}(a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C}_{\times Y^{p}}, \frac{1}{8}} \quad\|[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}](a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p,}}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $a \in \mathbb{C}, f \in X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$, and $g \in Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$.
Based on these bounds and the nonlinear estimates from Sect. 4 we then prove the existence of a solution to Eq. (3.17) by a fixed point argument.

### 5.1 A convenient expression for $\mathcal{K}$

First, we need to obtain an explicit expression for the operator $\mathcal{K}$. Definition (3.15) can be rewritten as

$$
(\mathcal{K}+1)\binom{a}{f}=\mathcal{F}\left(|\cdot|\left[\mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{a}{f}\right]^{\prime}\right)-\mathcal{A}\binom{a}{f}
$$

or, equivalently,

$$
\mathcal{F}^{-1}(\mathcal{K}+1)\binom{a}{f}=|\cdot|\left[\mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{a}{f}\right]^{\prime}-\mathcal{F}^{-1} \mathcal{A}\binom{a}{f} .
$$

By definition of $\mathcal{A}$ and Eq. (3.14) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{F}^{-1} \mathcal{A}\binom{a}{f} & =\mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{0}{-2|\cdot| f^{\prime}-\frac{5}{2} f-\frac{|\cdot| \rho^{\prime}}{\rho} f} \\
& =-2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(\cdot, \eta) \eta f^{\prime}(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta-\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(\cdot, \eta)\left[\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\eta \rho^{\prime}(\eta)}{\rho(\eta)}\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta
\end{aligned}
$$

and, assuming that $f \in C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$, an integration by parts yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{F}^{-1} \mathcal{A}\binom{a}{f} & =2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(\cdot, \eta) f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta+\int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(\cdot, \eta)\left[-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\eta \rho^{\prime}(\eta)}{\rho(\eta)}\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta \\
& =2 \int_{0}^{\infty} \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(\cdot, \eta) f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta+\mathcal{F}^{-1}\left(\left(-\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1 \cdot \mid \rho^{\prime}}{\rho}\right) f\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Consequently, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{F}^{-1} \mathcal{K}\binom{a}{f}(R)= & a \frac{\left(R \partial_{R}-1\right) \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right)}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}} \\
& +\int_{0}^{\infty}\left[R \partial_{R} \phi(R, \eta)-2 \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(R, \eta)\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta \\
& -\mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{0}{\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{|\cdot| \rho^{\prime}}{\rho}\right) f}(R)
\end{aligned}
$$

and thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{K}_{d d} a & =\frac{a}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right)\left[R \partial_{R}-1\right] \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right) d R=-\frac{3}{2} a \\
\mathcal{K}_{c d} a(\xi) & =\frac{a}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi)\left[R \partial_{R}-1\right] \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right) d R \\
\mathcal{K}_{d c} f & =\int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right)\left[R \partial_{R} \phi(R, \eta)-2 \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(R, \eta)\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta d R
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{K}_{c c} f(\xi)= & \int_{0}^{\infty}
\end{aligned} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi)\left[R \partial_{R} \phi(R, \eta)-2 \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(R, \eta)\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta d R
$$

where, as before,

$$
\mathcal{K}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\mathcal{K}_{d d} & \mathcal{K}_{d c} \\
\mathcal{K}_{c d} & \mathcal{K}_{c c}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

## $5.2 \mathcal{K}_{c c}$ as a Calderón-Zygmund operator

First, we focus on $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ which is the most complicated of the above operators. The respective estimates for $\mathcal{K}_{c d}$ and $\mathcal{K}_{d c}$ will follow easily after we have understood $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ and $\mathcal{K}_{d d}$ is trivial anyway. In order to proceed, we need a more manageable representation of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$, more precisely of the integral part of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ which we denote by $\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{0}$ for the moment, i.e.,

$$
\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{0} f(\xi):=\int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi)\left[R \partial_{R} \phi(R, \eta)-2 \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(R, \eta)\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta d R .
$$

Note first that, for $f \in C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$, the function

$$
R \mapsto \int_{0}^{\infty}\left[R \partial_{R} \phi(R, \eta)-2 \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(R, \eta)\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta
$$

is rapidly decreasing as $R \rightarrow \infty$. This can be immediately concluded from the representation of $\phi$ given in Corollary 3.7 and integration by parts. It follows that the operator $\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{0}$ is well-defined as a linear mapping from $C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$ to $C[0, \infty)$. Furthermore, by dominated convergence, $\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{0}$ is continuous when viewed as a map into the space of distributions. Consequently, by the Schwartz kernel theorem there exists a (distributional) kernel $\tilde{K}_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\mathcal{K}}_{0} f(\xi)=\int_{0}^{\infty} \tilde{K}_{0}(\xi, \eta) f(\eta) d \eta \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

In fact, the operator $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ has already been studied in [27] and from there we have the following result (note carefully that our $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ is called $\mathcal{K}_{0}$ in [27]).

Theorem 5.2 For $f \in C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$ the operator $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ is given by

$$
\mathcal{K}_{c c} f(\xi)=\int_{0}^{\infty} K_{0}(\xi, \eta) f(\eta) d \eta
$$

where the kernel $K_{0}$ is of the form

$$
K_{0}(\xi, \eta)=\frac{\rho(\eta)}{\xi-\eta} F(\xi, \eta)
$$

with a symmetric function $F \in C^{2}((0, \infty) \times(0, \infty))$. Furthermore, for any $N \in \mathbb{N}$, $F$ satisfies the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
& |F(\xi, \eta)| \leq C_{N}\left\{\begin{array}{cr}
\xi+\eta & \xi+\eta \leq 1 \\
(\xi+\eta)^{-1}\left(1+\left|\xi^{\frac{1}{2}}-\eta^{\frac{1}{2}}\right|\right)^{-N} & \begin{array}{rl} 
\\
\xi+\eta & \geq 1
\end{array} ~
\end{array}\right. \\
& \left|\partial_{\xi} F(\xi, \eta)\right|+\left|\partial_{\eta} F(\xi, \eta)\right| \leq C_{N}\left\{\begin{array}{cr}
1 & \begin{array}{rl}
\xi+\eta & \leq 1 \\
(\xi+\eta)^{-\frac{3}{2}}\left(1+\left|\xi^{\frac{1}{2}}-\eta^{\frac{1}{2}}\right|\right)^{-N} & \\
\xi+\eta \geq 1
\end{array} ~
\end{array}\right. \\
& \max _{j+k=2}\left|\partial_{\xi}^{j} \partial_{\eta}^{k} F(\xi, \eta)\right| \leq C_{N}\left\{\begin{array}{cl}
(\xi+\eta)^{-\frac{1}{2}} & \xi+\eta \leq 1 \\
(\xi+\eta)^{-2}\left(1+\left|\xi^{\frac{1}{2}}-\eta^{\frac{1}{2}}\right|\right)^{-N} & \begin{array}{c} 
\\
\xi+\eta \geq 1
\end{array} . ~ . ~ . ~ . ~
\end{array}\right. \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof This is Theorem 5.1 in [27]. One starts with an integration by parts and thereby identifies the function $F$ which can be expressed as an integral over $\phi, \rho$ and some explicitly known function resulting from the potential $V$. The stated estimates are then obtained by a careful analysis of this expression based on the asymptotic descriptions of $\phi$ and $\rho$ from Sect. 3. We refer the reader to [27] for the details.

### 5.3 Bounds for $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$

In order to obtain estimates in the $X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}$ and $Y^{p, \alpha}$ spaces, we require boundedness of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ in weighted $L^{p}$ spaces. However, this problem reduces to boundedness on ordinary $L^{p}$ by simply attaching the weights to the kernel. The (weighted) $L^{2}$ boundedness of $\mathcal{K}_{0}$ is already established in [27], Proposition 5.2. Unfortunately, the result there does not exactly apply to our situation (at least not for small frequencies) since it only considers weights of the form $\langle\cdot\rangle^{2 \alpha}$ but we have to deal with more general expressions, cf. Definition 3.10. Thus, we have to make sure that despite this slight modification the reasoning in [27] still goes through. Furthermore, we have to take care of the $L^{p}$ component in $X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}$ which is not present in [27]. Finally, we need to exploit a certain additional smoothing property of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ at small frequencies which was irrelevant for the construction in [27].

In order to prove boundedness in weighted spaces of the type occurring in the definition of $X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}$, we define kernels $K_{0}^{(a, b)}$ for $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
K_{0}^{(a, b)}(\xi, \eta):=\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\langle\xi\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \xi^{-a}\langle\xi\rangle^{-b} K_{0}(\xi, \eta) \eta^{a}\langle\eta\rangle^{b} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and denote by $\mathcal{K}_{0}^{(a, b)}$ the corresponding operators. Observe carefully the additional weight $\xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\langle\xi\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}}$ on the "output" variable which encodes the aforementioned smoothing effect. Our aim is to prove $L^{p}$ boundedness of $\mathcal{K}_{0}^{(a, b)}$ for any $a, b$ and $1<p<\infty$ which then implies the desired boundedness properties of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ in $X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}$ and $Y^{p, \alpha}$.

Due to the singular behavior of the spectral measure at zero it is advantageous to separate the diagonal from the off-diagonal behavior. This is most effectively done by introducing a dyadic covering of the diagonal $\Delta=\left\{(\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^{2}: \xi=\eta\right\}$,

$$
\Delta \subset \bigcup_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} I_{j} \times I_{j}
$$

where $I_{j}:=\left[2^{j-1}, 2^{j+1}\right]$. Furthermore, let $\chi: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow[0,1]$ be a smooth bump function satisfying

$$
\chi(\xi):= \begin{cases}1 & \text { if } \xi \in\left[\frac{3}{4}, \frac{7}{4}\right] \\ 0 & \text { if } \xi \leq \frac{1}{2} \text { or } \xi \geq 2\end{cases}
$$

and set $\chi_{j}(\xi):=\chi\left(2^{-j} \xi\right)$. Then we have $\operatorname{supp}\left(\chi_{j}\right) \subset I_{j}$ and the sets $\left\{(\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^{2}\right.$ : $\left.\chi_{j}(\xi) \chi_{j}(\eta)=1\right\}$ still cover the diagonal. We smoothly restrict the kernel $K_{0}^{(a, b)}$ to $I_{j} \times I_{j}$ by using $\chi_{j}$ and write

$$
\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)} f:=\chi_{j} \mathcal{K}_{0}^{(a, b)}\left(\chi_{j} f\right)
$$

for the corresponding truncated operator.
Lemma 5.3 Fix $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and let $1<p<\infty$. Then $\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)}$ extends to a bounded operator on $L^{p}(\mathbb{R})$ and

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \lesssim\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}
$$

for all $f \in L^{p}(\mathbb{R})$ and $j \in \mathbb{Z}, j \leq 2$.
Proof The point of the dyadic decomposition is of course that $\xi, \eta \in I_{j}$ implies $\eta \leq 4 \xi$. In other words, for any two elements $\xi, \eta \in I_{j}$ we have $\xi \simeq \eta \simeq 2^{j}$ with implicit constants independent of $j$ ! This allows us to control the singular behavior of $\rho(\eta)$ uniformly in $j$. We write $F(\xi, \eta)=F(\xi, \xi)+(\xi-\eta) \tilde{F}(\xi, \eta)$ where

$$
\tilde{F}(\xi, \eta)=-\int_{0}^{1} \partial_{2} F(\xi, \xi+s(\eta-\xi)) d s
$$

and by Theorem 5.2 we have the bound $|\tilde{F}(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim 1$ for all $\xi, \eta$. Thus, the kernel decomposes as $K_{j, 0}^{(a, b)}(\xi, \eta)=A_{j}(\xi, \eta)+B_{j}(\xi, \eta)$ where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{j}(\xi, \eta)=\chi_{j}(\xi) \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\langle\xi\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \xi^{-a}\langle\xi\rangle^{-b} \frac{F(\xi, \xi)}{\xi-\eta} \chi_{j}(\eta) \rho(\eta) \eta^{a}\langle\eta\rangle^{b}=: \frac{\psi_{0, j}(\xi) \psi_{1, j}(\eta)}{\xi-\eta} \\
& B_{j}(\xi, \eta)=\chi_{j}(\xi) \xi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\langle\xi\rangle^{\frac{1}{2}} \xi^{-a}\langle\xi\rangle^{-b} \tilde{F}(\xi, \eta) \chi_{j}(\eta) \rho(\eta) \eta^{a}\langle\eta\rangle^{b}
\end{aligned}
$$

and we call the respective operators $\mathcal{A}_{j}$ and $\mathcal{B}_{j}$. In other words, we have $\mathcal{A}_{j} f=$ $\pi \psi_{0, j} H\left(\psi_{1, j} f\right)$ where $H$ is the Hilbert transform. By the $L^{p}$ boundedness of $H$ for $p \in(1, \infty)$ we immediately obtain

$$
\left\|\mathcal{A}_{j} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \lesssim\left\|\psi_{0, j}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}\left\|\psi_{1, j} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \leq\left\|\psi_{0, j}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}\left\|\psi_{1, j}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}
$$

and from Theorem 5.2 and Lemma 3.4 we infer the bounds

$$
\left|\psi_{0, j}(\xi)\right| \lesssim 2^{\left(-\frac{1}{2}-a+1\right) j}, \quad\left|\psi_{1, j}(\eta)\right| \lesssim 2^{\left(-\frac{1}{2}+a\right) j}
$$

for all $\xi, \eta \in \mathbb{R}$ which yield $\left\|\mathcal{A}_{j} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \lesssim\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}$. Furthermore, the kernel $B_{j}$ satisfies

$$
\left|B_{j}(\xi, \eta)\right| \lesssim 2^{-j} \chi_{j}(\xi) \chi_{j}(\eta)
$$

and thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{B}_{j} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} & \lesssim 2^{-j}\left\|\chi_{j}\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}\left\|\chi_{j}\right\|_{L^{p^{\prime}}(\mathbb{R})}\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \\
& \lesssim 2^{\left(-1+\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{p^{\prime}}\right) j}\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}=\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} .
\end{aligned}
$$

An analogous result holds for $j \geq 1$ as well.
Lemma 5.4 Fix $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and let $1<p<\infty$. Then $\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)}$ extends to a bounded operator on $L^{p}(\mathbb{R})$ and

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \lesssim\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}
$$

for all $f \in L^{p}(\mathbb{R})$ and $j \in \mathbb{Z}, j \geq 1$.
Proof We perform the same decomposition $\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)}=\mathcal{A}_{j}+\mathcal{B}_{j}$ as in the proof of Lemma 5.3 and this time we have

$$
\left|\psi_{0, j}(\xi)\right| \lesssim 2^{-(a+b+1) j}, \quad\left|\psi_{1, j}(\eta)\right| \lesssim 2^{\left(\frac{1}{2}+a+b\right) j}
$$

for all $\xi, \eta \in \mathbb{R}$ by Theorem 5.2 and Lemma 3.4. Consequently, as before, the $L^{p}$ boundedness of the Hilbert transform yields $\left\|\mathcal{A}_{j} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \lesssim\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}$ for $p \in(1, \infty)$.

For the operator $\mathcal{B}_{j}$ we note that $|\tilde{F}(\xi, \eta)| \lesssim|\xi+\eta|^{-\frac{3}{2}}$ by Theorem 5.2 and thus, $\left|B_{j}(\xi, \eta)\right| \lesssim 2^{-j} \chi_{j}(\xi) \chi_{j}(\eta)$ which yields $\left\|\mathcal{B}_{j} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})} \lesssim\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}$.

The bounds obtained in Lemmas 5.3 and 5.4 can be summed.
Corollary 5.5 Fix $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^{2}$ and $1<p<\infty$. Then the operator

$$
\mathcal{K}_{0, \Delta}^{(a, b)}:=\sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} \mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)}
$$

is bounded on $L^{p}(\mathbb{R})$.
Proof It suffices to note that

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{0, \Delta}^{(a, b)} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}^{p} \lesssim \sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}}\left\|\mathcal{K}_{0, j}^{(a, b)}\left(1_{I_{j}} f\right)\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}^{p} \lesssim \sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}}\left\|1_{I_{j}} f\right\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}^{p} \lesssim\|f\|_{L^{p}(\mathbb{R})}^{p}
$$

by Lemmas 5.3 and 5.4 where $1_{I_{j}}$ denotes the characteristic function of the set $I_{j}$.
Now we can conclude the desired boundedness properties of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$.
Proposition 5.6 Fix $\alpha \geq 0$ and $\delta>0$ small. Furthermore, let $1<p<\infty$ be so large that $p^{\prime}(1-\delta)<1$. Then we have the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c c} f\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} & \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} \\
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c c} f\right\|_{Y, \alpha} & \lesssim\left\|\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}\right. \\
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c c} f\right\|_{Y^{p, \alpha}} & \lesssim f \|_{Y^{p, \alpha}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof We write $\mathcal{K}_{\Delta} f:=\sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} \chi_{j} \mathcal{K}_{c c}\left(\chi_{j} f\right)$ for the diagonal part of $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$. By Corollary 5.5 it is evident that $\left\|\mathcal{K}_{\Delta} f\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ and $\left\|\mathcal{K}_{\Delta} f\right\|_{Y^{p, \alpha}} \lesssim\|f\|_{Y, \alpha}^{p, \alpha}$. In order to obtain the mixed estimate we exploit the smoothing property, i.e., we note that

$$
\left.\left\|\mathcal{K}_{\Delta} f\right\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\| \| \cdot\right|^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle\cdot\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}} f\left\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\right\||\cdot|^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\langle\cdot\rangle^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta} f\left\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\right\| f \|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

as well as

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{\Delta}(f)\langle\cdot\rangle^{\alpha} \rho^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\left\|f|\cdot|^{\frac{1}{2}}\langle\cdot\rangle^{\alpha-\frac{1}{2}} \rho^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)} \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

It remains to study the off-diagonal contributions and to this end we set

$$
\varphi_{A}(\xi, \eta):=1_{A}(\xi, \eta)\left[1-\sum_{j \in \mathbb{Z}} \chi_{j}(\xi) \chi_{j}(\eta)\right]
$$

for $A \subset[0, \infty)^{2}$. We distinguish between large $\xi, \eta$ and small $\xi, \eta$ and consider the two truncated kernels

$$
K_{-}:=\varphi_{[0,1]^{2}} K_{0}, \quad K_{+}:=\varphi_{[0, \infty)^{2} \backslash[0,1]^{2}} K_{0}
$$

and denote by $\mathcal{K}_{-}, \mathcal{K}_{+}$the respective operators. Note that $(\xi, \eta) \in \operatorname{supp}\left(\varphi_{[0,1]^{2}}\right)$ implies that $\eta \leq c \xi$ or $\eta \geq \frac{1}{c} \xi$ for a suitable $c \in(0,1)$. This implies $|\xi-\eta| \gtrsim$ $\xi+\eta$ and from Theorem 5.2 and Lemma 3.4 we obtain the estimate $\left|K_{-}(\xi, \eta)\right| \lesssim$ $\varphi_{[0,1]^{2}}(\xi, \eta) \eta^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. We infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|\mathcal{K}_{-} f(\xi)\right| & \lesssim 1_{[0,1]}(\xi) \int_{0}^{1} \eta^{-\frac{1}{2}}|f(\eta)| d \eta=1_{[0,1]}(\xi) \int_{0}^{1} \eta^{-1+\delta}\left|\eta^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta} f(\eta)\right| d \eta \\
& \lesssim 1_{[0,1]}(\xi)\left\||\cdot|^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta} f\right\|_{L^{p}(0,1)}
\end{aligned}
$$

by Hölder's inequality and the condition $p^{\prime}(1-\delta)<1$. Note that this estimate implies $\left|\mathcal{K}_{-} f(\xi)\right| \lesssim 1_{[0,1]}(\xi)\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ and also $\left|\mathcal{K}_{-} f(\xi)\right| \lesssim 1_{[0,1]}(\xi)\|f\|_{Y p, \alpha}$ for all $\xi \geq 0$. Thus, we immediately obtain the bound $\left\|\mathcal{K}_{-} f\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} \lesssim\left\|\mathcal{K}_{-} f\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0,1)} \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$. For the remaining two estimates it is crucial that the spectral measure $\rho$ be integrable near 0 , i.e., we have

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{-} f\right\|_{Y p, \alpha} \lesssim\left\|\mathcal{K}_{-} f\right\|_{L^{\infty}(0,1)}\|\rho\|_{L^{1}(0,1)} \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

and analogously, $\left\|\mathcal{K}_{-} f\right\|_{Y^{p, \alpha}} \lesssim\|f\|_{Y p, \alpha}$.
In order to bound the operator $\mathcal{K}_{+}$we note that, as before, we have $|\xi-\eta| \gtrsim \xi+\eta$ on $\operatorname{supp}\left(\varphi_{[0, \infty)^{2} \backslash[0,1]^{2}}\right)$ and thus, by Theorem 5.2 and Lemma 3.6 we infer $\left|K_{+}(\xi, \eta)\right| \leq$ $C_{N}\langle\xi\rangle^{-N}\langle\eta\rangle^{-N}$ for any $N$. This yields the three stated estimates for $\mathcal{K}_{+}$as well.

### 5.4 Estimates for the operators $\mathcal{K}_{d c}$ and $\mathcal{K}_{c d}$

It is now an easy exercise to conclude the respective boundedness for the remaining operators $\mathcal{K}_{d c}$ and $\mathcal{K}_{c d}$.

Lemma 5.7 Let $\alpha \geq 0, \delta>0$ and $1<p<\infty$ be as in Proposition 5.6. Then we have the bounds

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|, \quad\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} f\right| \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

as well as

$$
\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|, \quad\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} g\right| \lesssim\|g\|_{Y}{ }^{p, \alpha}
$$

for all $a \in \mathbb{C}$ and $f \in X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}, g \in Y^{p, \alpha}$.

Proof Recall that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{K}_{c d} a(\xi) & =\frac{a}{\left\|\phi\left(\cdot, \xi_{d}\right)\right\|_{L^{2}(0, \infty)}^{2}} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi(R, \xi)\left[R \partial_{R}-1\right] \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right) d R \\
\mathcal{K}_{d c} f & =\int_{0}^{\infty} \int_{0}^{\infty} \phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right)\left[R \partial_{R} \phi(R, \eta)-2 \eta \partial_{\eta} \phi(R, \eta)\right] f(\eta) \rho(\eta) d \eta d R
\end{aligned}
$$

According to Lemma 3.5 and Corollary 3.7 we obtain $\left|\mathcal{K}_{c d} a(\xi)\right| \lesssim|a|\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{3}{2}}$ by performing two integrations by parts. This already shows $\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|$ and $\left\|\mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|$ as claimed. Furthermore, the operator $\mathcal{K}_{d c}$ has a similar (in fact, better behaved) kernel as $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ and we conclude $\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} f\right| \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ as well as $\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} g\right| \lesssim$ $\|g\|_{Y^{p, \alpha}}$.

We summarize our results.
Corollary 5.8 Let $\delta>0$ be small and assume $p \in(1, \infty)$ be so large that $p^{\prime}(1-\delta)<1$. Then the operator $\mathcal{K}$ satisfies the estimates

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\|\mathcal{K}(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
&\|\mathcal{K}(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
&\|\mathcal{K}(a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\|(a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $a \in \mathbb{C}, f \in X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$ and $g \in Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$.
Proof This is the content of Proposition 5.6 and Lemma 5.7.

### 5.5 Estimates for $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]$

It remains to estimate the commutator $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]$. To this end recall that

$$
\mathcal{A}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 0 \\
0 & \mathcal{A}_{c}
\end{array}\right)
$$

with $\mathcal{A}_{c} f(\xi)=-\left[2 \xi \partial_{\xi}+\frac{5}{2}+\frac{\xi \rho^{\prime}(\xi)}{\rho(\xi)}\right] f(\xi)$. Thus, the commutator reads

$$
[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & \mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} \\
-\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} & {\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right]}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Obviously, the most complicated contribution comes from $\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right]$. Recall that $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$ is a continuous map from $C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty)$ to the space of distributions $\mathcal{D}^{\prime}(0, \infty)$. Consequently, $\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right]: C_{c}^{\infty}(0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^{\prime}(0, \infty)$ is well-defined and continuous.

Proposition 5.9 Let $\alpha, \delta, p$ be as in Proposition 5.6. Then $\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right]$ satisfies the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right] f\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} \\
& \left\|\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right] f\right\|_{Y, \alpha, \alpha} \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}} \\
& \left\|\left[\mathcal{A}_{c}, \mathcal{K}_{c c}\right] f\right\|_{Y, \alpha, \alpha} \lesssim\|f\|_{Y^{p, \alpha}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Proof In [27], Proposition 5.2 it is shown that [ $\mathcal{K}_{c c}, \mathcal{A}_{c}$ ] has a similar kernel as $\mathcal{K}_{c c}$. Thus, the verification of the stated bound consists of a repetition of the above arguments that led to Proposition 5.6.

Finally, we bound the operators $\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d}$ and $\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c}$.
Lemma 5.10 Let $\alpha, \delta, p$ be as in Proposition 5.6. Then we have the bounds

$$
\left\|\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|, \quad\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} f\right| \lesssim\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}
$$

as well as

$$
\left\|\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|, \quad\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} g\right| \lesssim\|g\|_{Y}{ }^{p, \alpha}
$$

for all $a \in \mathbb{C}$ and $f \in X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}, g \in Y^{p, \alpha}$.
Proof We start with $\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d}$. If $0<\xi \ll 1$ we have $\left|\xi \partial_{\xi} \phi(R, \xi)\right| \lesssim\langle R\rangle$ for all $R>0$ by Lemmas 3.2, 3.3 and Corollary 3.7. This implies $\left|\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} a(\xi)\right| \lesssim 1$ since $\phi\left(R, \xi_{d}\right)$ decays exponentially as $R \rightarrow \infty$. On the other hand, if $\xi \gtrsim 1$, we obtain by integration by parts the estimate $\left|\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} a(\xi)\right| \lesssim\langle\xi\rangle^{-\frac{3}{2}}$ as in the proof of Lemma 5.7. This shows $\left\|\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|$ and $\left\|\mathcal{A}_{c} \mathcal{K}_{c d} a\right\|_{Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim|a|$.

Furthermore, from [27], Theorem 5.1 we have the representation

$$
\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} f=\int_{0}^{\infty} \tilde{K}_{d}(\eta) f(\eta) d \eta
$$

with $\tilde{K}_{d}$ bounded and rapidly decreasing. This yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} f\right| \lesssim\left\||\cdot|^{-\frac{1}{2}+\delta}\left|\tilde{K}_{d}\right|^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_{L^{p^{\prime}}(0, \infty)}\left\||\cdot|^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\left|\tilde{K}_{d}\right|^{\frac{1}{2}} f\right\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)} \\
& \quad \lesssim\left\||\cdot|^{\frac{1}{2}-\delta}\left|\tilde{K}_{d}\right|^{\frac{1}{2}} f\right\|_{L^{p}(0, \infty)}
\end{aligned}
$$

since $p^{\prime}\left(-\frac{1}{2}+\delta\right)>p^{\prime}(-1+\delta)>-1$ by assumption and this yields $\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} f\right| \lesssim$ $\|f\|_{X_{\delta}^{p, \alpha}}$ as well as $\left|\mathcal{K}_{d c} \mathcal{A}_{c} g\right| \lesssim\|g\|_{Y, \alpha}$.

By putting together Proposition 5.9 and Lemma 5.10 we arrive at the desired result.

Corollary 5.11 Let $\delta>0$ be small and assume $p \in(1, \infty)$ be so large that $p^{\prime}(1-\delta)$ $<1$. Then the operator $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]$ satisfies the estimates

$$
\begin{aligned}
\|[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}](a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} & \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
\|[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}](a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} & \lesssim\|(a, f)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
\|[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}](a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} & \lesssim\|(a, g)\|_{\mathbb{C} \times Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $a \in \mathbb{C}, f \in X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$ and $g \in Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$.
5.6 Construction of an exact solution in the forward lightcone

We solve the main equation (3.17) by a contraction argument. To this end, we write $\mathcal{H}:=\operatorname{diag}\left(\mathcal{H}_{d}, \mathcal{H}_{c}\right)$ for the solution operator of the transport equation (3.20), (3.21). Furthermore, we set

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi\left(x_{d}, x\right):=\mathcal{H}\left[\mathcal{N}\left(x_{d}, x\right)+\mathcal{R}_{v} \mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)+\mathcal{T}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)+\hat{E}_{2}\right] \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{R}_{v} \mathcal{B}_{v}\binom{x_{d}}{x}(\tau, \xi) & :=-\beta_{v}(\tau)(2 \mathcal{K}+1)\left(\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) \mathcal{A}\right)\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{x(\tau, \cdot)} \\
\mathcal{T}_{\nu}\binom{x_{d}}{x}(\tau, \xi) & :=-\beta_{v}(\tau)^{2}\left(\mathcal{K}^{2}+[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{K}]+\mathcal{K}+\frac{\beta_{v}^{\prime}(\tau)}{\beta_{v}(\tau)^{2}} \mathcal{K}\right)\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{x(\tau, \cdot)}(\xi) \\
\hat{E}_{2}(\tau, \xi) & :=\binom{\hat{e}_{2}\left(\tau, \xi_{d}\right)}{\hat{e}_{2}(\tau, \xi)}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{B}_{v}\binom{x_{d}}{x}(\tau, \xi):=\left(\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau) \mathcal{A}\right)\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{x(\tau, \cdot)}(\xi)
$$

Thus, solutions of Eq. (3.17) correspond to fixed points of $\Phi$. In order to simplify notation, we define the following Banach space where we run our fixed point argument.
Definition 5.12 Fix a $\delta$ with $2\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|<\delta<\frac{1}{8}$ and a (large) $p \in(2, \infty)$ such that $p^{\prime}\left(1-\delta+2\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|\right)<1$. Then, for $x_{d}:\left[\tau_{0}, \infty\right) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $x:\left[\tau_{0}, \infty\right) \times[0, \infty) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, where $\tau_{0}>0$, we set
$\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\| \mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}:=\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-28} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}+\left\|\mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}$.
The Banach space of the respective functions is denoted by $\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, \nu}$.

Theorem 5.13 Let $\tau_{0} \geq 1$ be sufficiently large and $v$ be sufficiently close to 1 . Then $\Phi$ (as defined in Eq. (5.3)) maps the unit ball in $\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}$ to itself and is contractive, i.e.,

$$
\left\|\Phi\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\Phi\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}} \leq \frac{1}{2}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}}
$$

for all $\left(x_{d}, x\right),\left(y_{d}, y\right) \in \mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}$ with $\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}_{0}, v} \leq 1,\left\|\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}_{0}, v} \leq 1$. As a consequence, there exists a unique fixed point of $\Phi$ (and hence, a solution of Eq. (3.17)) which belongs to $\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}$ (infact, to the unit ball in $\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, \nu}$ ).

Proof We consider each term on the right-hand side of Eq. (5.3) separately.
(1) According to Lemma 4.1 we have $\hat{E}_{2} \in L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-\delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-\delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$ and thus, we find

$$
\left\|\mathcal{H} \hat{E}_{2}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim \tau_{0}^{-\delta}\left\|\hat{E}_{2}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-\delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-\delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

and also

$$
\left\|\mathcal{B}_{v} \mathcal{H} \hat{E}_{2}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim \tau_{0}^{-\delta}\left\|\hat{E}_{2}\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-\delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-\delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

by Proposition 3.11 and Lemma 3.12. Hence, since $\tau_{0} \geq 1$ is assumed large, we infer $\left\|\mathcal{H} \hat{E}_{2}\right\|_{\mathcal{X}}{ }^{\tau_{0}, \nu} \leq \frac{1}{8}$.
(2) By Corollaries 5.8 and 5.11 we infer

$$
\left\|\mathcal{T}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 4-4 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 4-4 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

and by Proposition 3.11 and Lemma 3.12 this implies

$$
\left\|\mathcal{H} \mathcal{T}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim \tau_{0}^{-1+2 \delta}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

as well as

$$
\left\|\mathcal{B}_{v} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{T}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim \tau_{0}^{-1+2 \delta}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

We obtain $\left\|\mathcal{H} \mathcal{T}_{\nu}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}} \leq \frac{1}{8}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}}$ provided that $\tau_{0} \geq 1$ is sufficiently large.
(3) From Corollary 5.8 we obtain

$$
\left\|\mathcal{R}_{v} \mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|\left\|\mathcal{B}_{\nu}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}
$$

by recalling that $\beta_{v}(\tau)=-\left(\frac{1}{v}-1\right) \tau^{-1}$. By Proposition 3.11 and Lemma 3.12 this yields
$\left\|\mathcal{H} \mathcal{R}_{\nu} \mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|\left\|\mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y_{Y}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}}$
as well as

$$
\left\|\mathcal{B}_{v} \mathcal{H} \mathcal{R}_{v} \mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \lesssim\left|\frac{1}{v}-1\right|\left\|\mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} .
$$

Consequently, if $v$ is sufficiently close to 1 , we infer $\left\|\mathcal{H} \mathcal{R}_{\nu} \mathcal{B}_{v}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\| \mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v} \leq$ $\frac{1}{8}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\| \mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}$.
(4) Finally, for the nonlinearity we infer from Lemma 4.10 that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|\mathcal{N}\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\mathcal{N}\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 4} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} \\
& \quad \lesssim \tau_{0}^{-\frac{1}{4}+2 \delta}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 3-2 \delta} \times L_{\tau_{0}}^{\infty, 2-4 \delta} X_{\delta}^{p, \frac{1}{8}}} .
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $\left(x_{d}, x\right),\left(y_{d}, y\right)$ in the unit ball in $\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}$. As before, since $\tau_{0}$ is large, Proposition 3.11 and Lemma 3.12 yield $\left\|\mathcal{H} \mathcal{N}\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\mathcal{H} \mathcal{N}\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}} \leq$ $\frac{1}{8}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)-\left(y_{d}, y\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}_{0}, v}$ and by recalling that $\mathcal{N}(0)=0$ this also implies $\left\|\mathcal{H} \mathcal{N}\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}} \leq \frac{1}{8}\left\|\left(x_{d}, x\right)\right\|_{\mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, v}}$.

The claim now follows by the contraction mapping principle.
5.7 Transformation to the physical space

Recall that our original intention was to solve Eq. (3.2), given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square \varepsilon+5 u_{0}^{4} \varepsilon=5\left(u_{0}^{4}-u_{2}^{4}\right) \varepsilon-N\left(u_{2}, \varepsilon\right)-e_{2}, \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $u_{0}(t, r)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)$ and the functions $u_{2}$ and $e_{2}$ are the approximate solution and the error constructed in Sect. 2. However, $u_{2}$ and $e_{2}$ are only defined in the forward lightcone

$$
K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty}=\left\{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3}: t \geq t_{0}, 0 \leq|x| \leq t-c\right\}, \quad t_{0}>c>0
$$

and as a consequence, we had to introduce the smooth cut-off $\chi_{c}(t, r):=\chi\left(\frac{t-r}{c}\right)$ where $\chi(s)=0$ for $s \leq \frac{1}{2}$ and $\chi(s)=1$ for $s \geq 1$. Then we considered the truncated equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\square \varepsilon+5 u_{0}^{4} \varepsilon=\chi_{c}\left[5\left(u_{0}^{4}-u_{2}^{4}\right) \varepsilon-N\left(u_{2}, \varepsilon\right)-e_{2}\right] \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

instead of Eq. (5.4). As a consequence of Theorem 5.13 we now have the following result which concludes the construction of the solution inside the forward lightcone.

Lemma 5.14 Let $t_{0}>0$ be sufficiently large and $v$ be sufficiently close to 1 . Then there exists a solution $\varepsilon$ of $E q$. (5.5) with

$$
\left\|\left(\varepsilon(t, \cdot), \varepsilon_{t}(t, \cdot)\right)\right\|_{H^{1}\left(B_{2 t}\right) \times L^{2}\left(B_{2 t}\right)} \lesssim t^{-1}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}$ where $B_{2 t}:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}:|x|<2 t\right\}$.
Proof Recall the transformations that led from Eq. (5.5) to the main system Eq. (3.17) which we have finally solved in Theorem 5.13. Schematically, we had

$$
\varepsilon \xrightarrow{(\tau, R)} \tilde{v} \xrightarrow{\cdot R} v \xrightarrow{\mathcal{F}}\binom{x_{d}}{x}
$$

and in order to prove the claim we simply have to undo these transformations. The coordinates $(t, r)$ and $(\tau, R)$ are related by $\tau=\frac{1}{v} \lambda(t) t$ and $R=\lambda(t) r$. Thus, let $\left(x_{d}, x\right) \in \mathcal{X}^{\tau_{0}, \nu}$ be the solution of Eq. (3.17) constructed in Theorem 5.13 (which exists since we assume $t_{0}$ and hence $\tau_{0}=\frac{1}{v} \lambda\left(t_{0}\right) t_{0}$ to be large) and set

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \tilde{v}_{-}(\tau, R):=R^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{(1-\chi) x(\tau, \cdot)}(R) \\
& \tilde{v}_{+}(\tau, R):=R^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\binom{0}{\chi x(\tau, \cdot)}(R)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\chi$ is again a smooth cut-off with $\chi(\xi)=0$ for, say, $\xi \leq \frac{1}{2}$ and $\chi(\xi)=1$ for $\xi \geq 1$. According to Lemma 4.3 we have $\tilde{v}_{+}(\tau, \cdot) \in H^{\frac{5}{4}}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ (recall that we have set $\alpha=\frac{1}{8}$ ) and therefore, $\left\|\tilde{v}_{+}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim\left\|\tilde{v}_{+}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{\frac{5}{4}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}} \lesssim \tau^{-2+4 \delta}$ for some small $\delta>0$ (see Definition 5.12). Furthermore, Lemma 4.3 yields $\left\|\tilde{v}_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim$ $\tau^{-2+4 \delta}$ and also, $\left\||\cdot| \tilde{v}_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim \tau^{-2+4 \delta}$. Thus, we obtain

$$
\left\|\tilde{v}_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{2 v \tau}\right)} \lesssim\left\||\cdot| \tilde{v}_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}\|1\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{2 v \tau}\right)} \lesssim \tau^{-\frac{3}{2}+4 \delta}
$$

which implies $\left\|\tilde{v}_{-}(\tau, \cdot)\right\|_{H^{2}\left(B_{2 v \tau}\right)} \lesssim \tau^{-\frac{3}{2}+4 \delta}$. By setting $\tilde{v}=\tilde{v}_{-}+\tilde{v}_{+}$we infer $\|\tilde{v}(\tau, \cdot)\|_{H^{1}\left(B_{2 v \tau}\right)} \lesssim \tau^{-\frac{3}{2}+4 \delta}$ and thus, with $\varepsilon(t, r)=\tilde{v}\left(\frac{1}{v} \lambda(t) t, \lambda(t) r\right)$, we obtain $\|\varepsilon(t, \cdot)\|_{H^{1}\left(B_{2 t}\right)} \lesssim t^{-1}$ since $v$ is assumed to be close to 1 .

For the time derivative recall that $\partial_{t}=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau)\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{\nu}(\tau) R \partial_{R}\right]$ and thus,

$$
\partial_{t} \varepsilon(t, r)=\tilde{\lambda}(\tau) R^{-1}\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(R \partial_{R}-1\right)\right] v(\tau, R) .
$$

By the transference identity Eq. (3.15) we have

$$
R^{-1}\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau)\left(R \partial_{R}-1\right)\right] v(\tau, R)=R^{-1} \mathcal{F}^{-1}\left(\left[\partial_{\tau}+\beta_{v}(\tau)(\mathcal{A}+\mathcal{K})\right]\binom{x_{d}(\tau)}{x(\tau, \cdot)}\right) .
$$

By Theorem 5.13, Lemma 4.2, Corollary 5.8 and the definition of the space $Y^{p, \frac{1}{8}}$ we therefore obtain the desired $\left\|\partial_{t} \varepsilon(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{2 t}\right)} \lesssim t^{-1}$.

## 6 Extraction of initial data

Let $\chi_{c}(t, r)$ be the smooth localizer to the truncated cone which is defined by $\chi_{c}(t, r)=$ $\chi\left(\frac{t-r}{c}\right)$ where $\chi$ is a fixed smooth cut-off with $\chi(s)=0$ for $s \leq \frac{1}{2}$ and $\chi(s)=1$ for $s \geq 1$. Furthermore, we set $\theta(t, r):=1-\chi\left(\frac{r}{2 t}\right)$, i.e., $\theta(t, r)=1$ if $r \leq t$ and $\theta(t, r)=0$ if $r \geq 2 t$. As a consequence of Lemma 5.14 there exists a function $u_{c}$ of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{c}(t, r)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)+\theta(t, r)\left[v_{0}(t, r)+v_{1}^{g}(t, r)+\varepsilon(t, r)\right]+\chi_{c}(t, r) v_{1}^{b}(t, r), \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $v_{0}$ and $v_{1}^{g}:=v_{11}^{g}+v_{12}^{g}, v_{1}^{b}:=v_{11}^{b}+v_{12}^{b}$ are from Lemmas 2.2 and 2.3, and $\square u_{c}(t, r)+u_{c}(t, r)^{5}=0$ provided that $(t, r) \in K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty}$ with $t_{0}>0$ sufficiently large.

### 6.1 Energy estimates

As a first step we establish energy bounds for the solution $u_{c}$.
Lemma 6.1 Let $t_{0} \geq 1$ be sufficiently large and suppose $v$ is sufficiently close to 1 . Then we have the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} u_{c}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}+c^{-\frac{v}{2}} \\
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}} \\
\left\|\nabla\left[u_{c}(t, \cdot)-W_{\lambda(t)}\right]\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}+c^{-\frac{v}{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}>2 c \geq 1$ where, as before, $W_{\lambda(t)}(r)=\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)$.
Proof We consider each constituent of $u_{c}$ separately.
(1) For the time derivative of $W_{\lambda(t)}$ we have

$$
\partial_{t}\left[\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} W(\lambda(t) r)\right]=\frac{1}{2} \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \lambda^{\prime}(t) W(\lambda(t) r)+\lambda(t)^{\frac{1}{2}} \lambda^{\prime}(t) r W^{\prime}(\lambda(t) r)
$$

and, since

$$
\int_{0}^{t}|W(\lambda(t) r)|^{2} r^{2} d r=\lambda(t)^{-3} \int_{0}^{\lambda(t) t}|W(r)|^{2} r^{2} d r \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-2} t
$$

we infer

$$
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{3}{2}} \lambda^{\prime}(t) t^{\frac{1}{2}} \simeq t^{-\frac{1}{2} v}=[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}} .
$$

(2) According to Lemma 2.2 we have the estimates

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|v_{0}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-2} r \\
\left|\partial_{t} v_{0}(t, r)\right|+\left|\partial_{r} v_{0}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\left[t^{-3} r+t^{-2}\right] \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-2}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}$ and $0 \leq r \leq 2 t$. Furthermore, note that $\left|\partial_{t} \theta(t, r)\right| \simeq r t^{-2}\left|\chi^{\prime}\left(\frac{r}{2 t}\right)\right|$ and $|\nabla \theta(t, r)| \simeq t^{-1}\left|\chi^{\prime}\left(\frac{r}{2 t}\right)\right|$. Thus, we obtain

$$
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} \theta(t, \cdot) v_{0}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-1} t^{-8} \int_{t}^{2 t} r^{6} d r \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-1}
$$

and analogously, $\left\|\nabla \theta(t, \cdot) v_{0}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. Similarly, we infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \theta(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} v_{0}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2}+\left\|\theta(t, \cdot) \nabla v_{0}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2} & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-1} t^{-4} \int_{0}^{2 t} r^{2} d r \\
& \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

(3) Note that $\theta(t, r) v_{1}^{g}(t, r)+\chi_{c}(t, r) v_{1}^{b}(t, r)=v_{1}(t, r)$ provided $r \leq \frac{1}{2} t$. Thus, in the case $r \leq \frac{1}{2} t$ we put $v_{1}^{g}$ and $v_{1}^{b}$ together and use the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|v_{1}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1} \\
\left|\partial_{t} v_{1}(t, r)\right|+\left|\partial_{r} v_{1}^{g}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-2}
\end{aligned}
$$

from Lemma 2.3. If $\frac{1}{2} t \leq r \leq 2 t$ we similarly have

$$
\left|v_{1}^{g}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1}\left|\partial_{t} v_{1}^{g}(t, r)\right|+\left|\partial_{r} v_{1}^{g}(t, r)\right| \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-2}
$$

by Lemma 2.3 and thus, these terms can be treated in the exact same fashion as $v_{0}$.
(4) For $\varepsilon$ it suffices to invoke the bound from Lemma 5.14 which immediately yields

$$
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t}[\theta(t, \cdot) \varepsilon(t, \cdot)]\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\|\nabla[\theta(t, \cdot) \varepsilon(t, \cdot)]\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim t^{-1} \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}
$$

(5) Finally, we come to the most interesting contribution, the term $\chi_{c} v_{1}^{b}=\chi_{c}\left(v_{11}^{b}+\right.$ $v_{12}^{b}$ ). We emphasize that the following estimates are key to the whole construction. We may restrict ourselves to $r \geq \frac{1}{2} t$ since the case $r \leq \frac{1}{2} t$ is already included in point (3) above. We start with $\chi_{c} v_{11}^{b}$. Lemma 2.3 yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|v_{11}^{b}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-1}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-v)} \\
\left|\partial_{t} v_{11}^{b}(t, r)\right|+\left|\partial_{r} v_{11}^{b}(t, r)\right| & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-\frac{1}{2}} t^{-2}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}(1-v)-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}$ and $\frac{1}{2} t \leq r<t$. Furthermore, note that

$$
\left|\partial_{t} \chi_{c}(t, r)\right|+\left|\partial_{r} \chi_{c}(t, r)\right| \simeq \frac{1}{c}\left|\chi^{\prime}\left(\frac{t-r}{c}\right)\right| .
$$

We infer

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\partial_{t} \chi_{c}(t, \cdot) v_{11}^{b}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t / 2}\right)}^{2} & \lesssim \frac{1}{c^{2}} \lambda(t)^{-1} t^{-2} \int_{t-c}^{t-\frac{c}{2}}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{1-v} r^{2} d r \\
& =\frac{1}{c^{2}} \lambda(t)^{-1} t \int_{1-\frac{c}{t}}^{1-\frac{c}{2 t}}(1-s)^{1-v} s^{2} d s \\
& \lesssim \frac{1}{(2-v) c^{2}} \underbrace{\lambda(t)^{-1} t}_{t^{2}-v}\left(\frac{c}{t}\right)^{2-v} \lesssim c^{-v}
\end{aligned}
$$

and by the very same calculation we also obtain $\left\|\nabla \chi_{c}(t, \cdot) v_{11}^{b}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim c^{-\frac{v}{2}}$. If the derivative hits $v_{11}^{b}$ we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} v_{11}^{b}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t / 2}\right)}^{2} & \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-1} t^{-4} \int_{\frac{1}{2} t}^{t-\frac{c}{2}}\left(1-\frac{r}{t}\right)^{-v-1} r^{2} d r \\
& =[\lambda(t) t]^{-1} \int_{\frac{1}{2}}^{1-\frac{c}{2 t}}(1-s)^{-v-1} s^{2} d s \\
& \lesssim \frac{1}{v} t^{-v}\left(\frac{c}{2 t}\right)^{-v} \lesssim c^{-v}
\end{aligned}
$$

and analogously we get $\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \nabla v_{11}^{b}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim c^{-\frac{v}{2}}$ as well. The term $v_{12}^{b}$ is handled by the exact same computations upon replacing $v$ by $3 v$.

Next, we estimate the residual energy outside the (truncated) lightcone $K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty}$.
Lemma 6.2 Under the assumptions of Lemma 6.1 we have the bounds

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left\|\chi_{c}(t, \cdot) \partial_{t} W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)} \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}} \\
\left\|\nabla W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)} \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}
\end{gathered}
$$

$P$ for all $t \geq t_{0}>2 c \geq 2$ where $B_{t-c}=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}:|x|<t-c\right\}$.

Proof The first bound follows from Lemma 6.1. Thus, it suffices to note that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\nabla W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}^{2} & \simeq \lambda(t) \int_{t-c}^{\infty}\left|\partial_{r} W(\lambda(t) r)\right|^{2} r^{2} d r \\
& \lesssim \lambda(t)^{3} \int_{t-c}^{\infty} \lambda(t)^{-4} r^{-2} d r \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-1}(t-c)^{-1} \\
& \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-1} .
\end{aligned}
$$

To conclude the energy bounds, we provide estimates for the $L^{6}$ norms.
Corollary 6.3 Under the assumptions of Lemma 6.1 we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|u_{c}(t, \cdot)-W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}+c^{-\frac{v}{2}} \\
\left\|W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)} & \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-\frac{1}{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $t \geq t_{0}>2 c \geq 2$.
Proof The first assertion is an immediate consequence of Lemma 6.1 and the Sobolev embedding $\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$. For the second bound we calculate explicitly

$$
\left\|W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)} \lesssim \lambda(t)^{3} \int_{t-c}^{\infty} \lambda(t)^{-6} r^{-6} r^{2} d r \lesssim \lambda(t)^{-3}(t-c)^{-3} \lesssim[\lambda(t) t]^{-3} .
$$

6.2 Extension of the solution to the whole space

Lemmas 6.1 and 6.2 show that the bulk of the energy of $u_{c}$ is concentrated on the soliton inside the truncated lightcone. Now we pick a sequence of times $\left(T_{n}\right)$ with $T_{n} \geq t_{0}$ and $T_{n} \rightarrow \infty$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Then we consider the sequence of Cauchy data ( $f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}$ ) given by

$$
\begin{align*}
f_{c}^{n}(r) & =u_{c}\left(T_{n}, r\right)  \tag{6.2}\\
g_{c}^{n}(r) & =\left.\chi_{c}\left(T_{n}, r\right) \partial_{t} u_{c}(t, r)\right|_{t=T_{n}} .
\end{align*}
$$

Since $\chi_{c}\left(T_{n}, r\right) \equiv 1$ for $r \leq T_{n}-c$, we have ${ }^{6}\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)=u_{c}\left[T_{n}\right]$ on $B_{T_{n}-c}$. As a consequence of Lemma 6.1, the sequence $\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)$ is uniformly bounded in $\dot{H}^{1} \times$ $L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Now we solve the equation backwards in time with data $\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)$ at $t=T_{n}$. For the following it is useful to introduce the notation

[^5]$$
K_{t_{0}, c}^{T_{n}}:=\left\{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3}: t_{0} \leq t \leq T_{n},|x| \leq t-c\right\}
$$

Furthermore, for $U \subset \mathbb{R}^{3}$ open we set

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{E}_{U}(f, g) & :=\frac{1}{2} \int_{U}\left(|\nabla f(x)|^{2}+|g(x)|^{2}\right) d x-\frac{1}{6} \int_{U}|f(x)|^{6} d x \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\|(f, g)\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}(U)}^{2}-\frac{1}{6}\|f\|_{L^{6}(U)}^{6} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, $\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3}}$ is the energy functional associated with the focusing quintic wave equation.
Lemma 6.4 Let $t_{0} \geq 1$ and $c \geq 1$ be sufficiently large and assume $t_{0} \geq 2 c$. Then, for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists an energy class solution $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}$ of

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\square u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, x)+u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, x)^{5}=0, \quad(t, x) \in\left[t_{0}, T_{n}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \\
u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[T_{n}\right]=\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

which satisfies $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}=u_{c}$ on $K_{t_{0}, c}^{T_{n}}$. Furthermore,

$$
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t_{0}-c}\right)} \rightarrow 0
$$

as $t_{0}, c \rightarrow \infty$, uniformly in $n$.
Proof Recall that, given data in $\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$, the Cauchy problem for the quintic wave equation can be solved locally in time. Furthermore, if the data are small in $\dot{H}^{1} \times$ $L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$, the corresponding solution exists globally in time, see [37] or [43], p. 142, Theorem 3.1. Given any $\delta>0$, we have $\left\|\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \leq\|W\|_{\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\delta$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ if we assume $t_{0}$ and $c$ to be sufficiently large (see Lemma 6.1). Thus, we infer the existence of $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}$ on $\left(T_{n}^{*}, T_{n}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{3}$ with some $T_{n}^{*}<T_{n}$ and we assume $T_{n}^{*}$ to be minimal with this property. Furthermore, the map

$$
t \mapsto\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}:\left(T_{n}^{*}, T_{n}\right] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}
$$

is continuous ([43], p. 142, Theorem 3.1). If $T_{n}^{*} \leq t_{0}$ we are done. Thus, assume that $T_{n}^{*}>t_{0}$. By causality it is clear that $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}=u_{c}$ on $\left(K_{T_{n}^{*}, c}^{T_{n}}\right)^{\circ}$, the interior of the truncated lightcone. Furthermore, by Lemma 6.1 and Corollary 6.3, the data satisfy

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)-\left(W_{\lambda\left(T_{n}\right)}, 0\right)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim \delta \\
\left\|f_{c}^{n}-W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} & \lesssim \delta
\end{aligned}
$$

and, by using that $\left\|\nabla W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\|\nabla W\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ and analogously for $\left\|W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$, this implies $\left|\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3}}\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)-\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3}}(W, 0)\right| \lesssim \delta^{2}+\delta^{6} \lesssim \delta^{2}$ for the total energy. In other words, the bulk of the total energy is concentrated on the soliton. By conservation of energy we infer that this has to hold for all times, i.e., $\left|\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3}}\left(u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right)-\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3}}(W, 0)\right| \lesssim \delta^{2}$
for all $t \in\left(T_{n}^{*}, T_{n}\right]$. Since $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}=u_{c}$ on $\left(K_{T_{n}^{*}, c}^{T_{n}}\right)^{\circ}$, we infer from Lemma 6.1 and Corollary 6.3 the bounds

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]-\left(W_{\lambda(t)}, 0\right)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{t-c}\right)} & \lesssim \delta \\
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, \cdot)-W_{\lambda(t)}\right\|_{L^{6}\left(B_{t-c}\right)} & \lesssim \delta
\end{aligned}
$$

which imply $\left|\mathcal{E}_{B_{t-c}}\left(u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right)-\mathcal{E}_{B_{t-c}}\left(W_{\lambda(t)}, 0\right)\right| \lesssim \delta^{2}$. Moreover, by Lemma 6.2 and Corollary 6.3 we have $\left|\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}}(W, 0)\right| \lesssim \delta^{2}$ and thus, $\left|\mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}}\left(u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right)\right| \lesssim \delta^{2}$ which shows that the total energy of the solution $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}$ outside the truncated lightcone stays small for all times. By a (slight modification of) the Sobolev inequality we infer $\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)} \lesssim\left\|\nabla u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}$ with an implicit constant that is independent of $t$. This estimate implies

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta^{2} & \gtrsim \mathcal{E}_{\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}}\left(u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}^{2}-\frac{1}{6}\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}^{6} \\
& \geq \frac{1}{2}\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}^{2}\left[1-C\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}^{4}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

for all $t \in\left(T_{n}^{*}, T_{n}\right]$. Initially, at $t=T_{n}$, we have

$$
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[T_{n}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}=\left\|\left(f_{c}^{n}, g_{c}^{n}\right)\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)} \leq \delta
$$

by Lemma 6.2 and therefore, we must have

$$
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)}^{2} \lesssim \delta^{2}
$$

for all $t \in\left(T_{n}^{*}, T_{n}\right]$ (provided $\delta>0$ is sufficiently small) since the map $t \mapsto u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}[t]$ is continuous from $\left(T_{n}^{*}, T_{n}\right]$ to $\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t-c}\right)$ by a classical $\frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ argument. We conclude that not only the total energy but also the kinetic energy of $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}$ stays small outside the truncated cone. Consequently, the small data global existence result allows us to extend the solution beyond time $T_{n}^{*}$ which contradicts the minimality of $T_{n}^{*}$. Thus, we must have $T_{n}^{*} \leq t_{0}$ and the Lemma is proved.

### 6.3 The Bahouri-Gérard decomposition

Our idea now is to consider the sequence of data $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]$ and attempt to extract a limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$. In effect, we shall not be able to do so, but we shall nonetheless be able to construct new initial data $u_{*}\left[t_{0}\right]$ resulting in an energy class solution $u_{*}(t, x)$ defined on all of $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{3}$ with the property that

$$
u_{*}=u_{c} \text { on } K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty} .
$$

In order to achieve this, we apply the celebrated Bahouri-Gérard decomposition [1]. From now on we always assume $t_{0}$ and $c$ to be sufficiently large with $t_{0} \geq 2 c$. Note
also that no space translations are necessary in the following lemma since all functions are in fact radial. Furthermore, it is convenient to introduce the notation

$$
u^{\lambda, t_{0}}(t, x):=\lambda^{-\frac{1}{2}} u\left(\frac{t-t_{0}}{\lambda}, \frac{x}{\lambda}\right) .
$$

Lemma 6.5 (Linear profile decomposition) Consider the sequence $\left(u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of Cauchy data for the solutions constructed in Lemma 6.4. Then, upon passing to a subsequence, there exists a sequence $\left(V_{i}\right)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of (fixed) radial free waves ${ }^{7}$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]=\sum_{i=1}^{A} V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]+W^{n A}\left[t_{0}\right] \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $n, A \in \mathbb{N}$ where $\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are suitable sequences of times and positive scaling factors, respectively, that satisfy

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\log \left(\frac{\lambda_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{j}}\right)\right|+\frac{\left|t_{n}^{i}-t_{n}^{j}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \rightarrow \infty, \quad i \neq j \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$, and $W^{n A}$ is a free wave with the property

$$
\lim _{A \rightarrow \infty} \limsup _{n \rightarrow \infty}\left\|W^{n A}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R}) L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=0
$$

Furthermore, for any $A \in \mathbb{N}$, we have asymptotic orthogonality in the sense that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left(V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid V_{j}^{\lambda_{n}^{j}, t_{n}^{j}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \rightarrow 0, \quad 1 \leq i, j \leq A, \quad i \neq j \\
& \left(V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid W^{n A}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \rightarrow 0, \quad 1 \leq i \leq A
\end{aligned}
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
Proof From Lemma 6.1 we deduce

$$
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{t_{0}-c}\right)}=\left\|u_{c}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{t_{0}-c}\right)} \lesssim 1
$$

and in the proof of Lemma 6.4 above we had

$$
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t_{0}-c}\right)} \lesssim \delta
$$

[^6]for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Thus, we infer
$$
\sup _{n \in \mathbb{N}}\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim 1
$$
and everything follows by the main theorem in [1] and the remark on p. 159.
Remark 6.6 We will also use a kind of "localized" orthogonality which can be derived as follows. Suppose $\left(v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=o(1)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and the energy of $v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]$ concentrates in $U \subset \mathbb{R}^{3}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, i.e.,
$$
\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}(U)}+o(1)
$$
as $n \rightarrow \infty$, or, in other words,
$$
\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash U\right)} \rightarrow 0 \quad(n \rightarrow \infty)
$$

Of course, we also assume that $\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)},\left\|w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim 1$ for all $n$. Then we have the localized orthogonality

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}(U)} & =\left(v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}-\left(v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash U\right)} \\
& o(1)
\end{aligned}
$$

since

$$
\left\|\left(v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right] \mid w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash U\right)}\right\| \leq\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash U\right)}\left\|w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash U\right)} \rightarrow 0
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
A triple $\left(V_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ like in Lemma 6.5 is called a (concentration) profile. As a first step we now show that certain profiles with scaling factors tending to zero cannot exist. Heuristically speaking, such profiles are excluded by the fact that they would concentrate at the origin as $n \rightarrow \infty$ but near $x=0, u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]$ equals $u_{c}\left[t_{0}\right]$ and is thus independent of $n$. In order to make the argument rigorous, one has to show that the concentration effect cannot be "cancelled" by the error term $W^{n A}$. This is a consequence of the asymptotic orthogonality of the profiles. Before coming to that, however, we introduce another notion. We call a profile $\left(V_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ bounded, if $\lambda_{n}^{i} \simeq 1$ and $\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right| \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Otherwise, the profile is called unbounded. Note that by condition (6.4) there exists at most one (nonzero) bounded profile in the decomposition Eq. (6.3).

Lemma 6.7 Consider the decomposition given in Lemma 6.5 and suppose there exists a profile $\left(V_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ with $\lambda_{n}^{i} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $V_{i}=0$.

Proof Fix $A \in \mathbb{N}$ and let $V_{b}$ be the unique bounded profile ( $V_{b}$ might be zero in which case we set $\lambda_{n}^{b}=1$ and $t_{n}^{b}=0$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ ). First, we claim that for any given $\varepsilon>0$ we can find a $\delta>0$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]-V_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{b}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)}<\varepsilon \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Indeed, $\left.u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right|_{B_{\delta}}$ is independent of $n$ for small enough $\delta$ since by construction we have $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]=u_{c}\left[t_{0}\right]$ on $B_{t_{0}-c}$, see Lemma 6.4. This shows that $\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)} \rightarrow 0$ as $\delta \rightarrow 0$, uniformly in $n$. Furthermore, by scaling and energy conservation we have

$$
\left\|V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}
$$

for any profile $V_{i}$ (bounded or unbounded). Since $\lambda_{n}^{b} \simeq 1$ and $\left|t_{n}^{b}\right| \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we obtain by the continuity of $t \mapsto\left\|V_{b}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ the bound $\left\|V_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{t}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)}<$ $\frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ provided $\delta>0$ is sufficiently small. Consequently, the triangle inequality yields the claim (6.5).

Note that by Eq. (6.3), Eq. (6.5) is equivalent to

$$
\left\|\sum_{i=1, i \neq b}^{A} V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]+W^{n A}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)}<\varepsilon
$$

We write $i \in Z_{A}$ iff $\lambda_{n}^{i} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Now observe that, for $i \in Z_{A}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\delta}\right)} \simeq & \left\|\partial_{1} V_{i}\left(\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}, \cdot\right)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\left.\delta / \lambda_{n}^{i}\right)}\right.} \\
& +\left\|\nabla V_{i}\left(\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}, \cdot\right)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\left.\delta / \lambda_{n}^{i}\right)}\right.} \rightarrow 0
\end{aligned}
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$ by the continuity of $t \mapsto\left\|V_{i}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$. For brevity we write

$$
v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]:=\sum_{i \in Z_{A}} V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right], \quad w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]:=\sum_{i \notin Z_{A}, i \neq b} V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]+W^{n A}\left[t_{0}\right] .
$$

By the pairwise orthogonality of the profiles and the triangle inequality we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varepsilon> & \left\|\sum_{i=1, i \neq b}^{A} V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]+W^{n A}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)}^{2}=\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]+w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)}^{2} \\
= & \left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]+w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2}-\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]+w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\delta}\right)}^{2} \\
\geq & \left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2}+\left\|w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2}-\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\delta}\right)}^{2} \\
& -\left\|w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\delta}\right)}^{2}-2\left\|v_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\delta}\right)}\left\|w_{n}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{\delta}\right)}+o(1) \\
= & \sum_{i \in Z_{A}}\left\|V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}^{2}+\left\|\sum_{i \notin Z_{A}, i \neq b} V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]+W^{n A}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{\delta}\right)}^{2}+o(1)
\end{aligned}
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Consequently, $\left\|V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}<\varepsilon$ for all $i \in Z_{A}$ provided $n$ is sufficiently large and, since $\varepsilon>0$ and $A \in \mathbb{N}$ were arbitrary, this yields the claim.

Our next goal is to prove that the energy of all unbounded profiles is small. As a preparation for this we need the following elementary observation which is just an instance of the strong Huygens' principle. As always, it suffices to consider the radial case for our purposes.

Lemma 6.8 (Strong Huygens' principle) Let $v: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a (radial) free wave and set

$$
A\left(R_{1}, R_{2}\right):=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}: R_{1}<|x|<R_{2}\right\}
$$

Then we have the estimate

$$
\|v[t]\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{R}\right)} \lesssim\|v[0]\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}(A(|t|-R,|t|+R))}+\|v(0, \cdot)\|_{L^{6}(A(|t|-R,|t|+R))}
$$

for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $R>0$ provided $|t| \geq R$.
Proof Note first that by the Sobolev embedding $\dot{H}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right) \hookrightarrow L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ we may assume $v(t, \cdot) \in L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$. Furthermore, by the time reflection symmetry it suffices to consider the case $t \geq R$. Since $v$ is radial, it is given explicitly by d'Alembert's formula

$$
v(t, r)=\frac{1}{2 r}\left[(t+r) f(t+r)-(t-r) f(t-r)+\int_{t-r}^{t+r} s g(s) d s\right]
$$

for $0 \leq r \leq t$ where $(f, g)=v[0]$. Based on this formula it is straightforward to prove the claimed estimate by using Hardy's and Hölder's inequalities.

We obtain a simple corollary which applies to certain concentration profiles in the Bahouri-Gérard decomposition.

Corollary 6.9 Suppose $v: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a (radial) free wave and let $\left(\lambda_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, $\left(t_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be sequences of (positive) scaling factors and times, respectively. If

- $\lambda_{n} \rightarrow \infty$
- or $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right|-R}{\lambda_{n}} \rightarrow \infty$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$
then

$$
\left\|v^{\lambda_{n}, t_{n}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{R}\right)} \rightarrow 0
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$ for any (fixed) $R>0$.
Proof Note that by scaling we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|v^{\lambda_{n}, t_{n}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{R}\right)}^{2}=\left\|\partial_{1} v\left(\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}}{\lambda_{n}}, \cdot\right)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{\left.R / \lambda_{n}\right)}\right)}^{2}+\left\|\nabla v\left(\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}}{\lambda_{n}}, \cdot\right)\right\|_{L^{2}\left(B_{\left.R / \lambda_{n}\right)}\right.}^{2} . \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

First, we consider the case $\lambda_{n} \rightarrow \infty$. If $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right|}{\lambda_{n}} \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ then the continuity of $t \mapsto\|v[t]\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ and Eq. (6.6) show that $\left\|v^{\lambda_{n}, t_{n}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{R}\right)} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. On the other hand, if $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right|}{\lambda_{n}} \rightarrow \infty$, we must have $\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right| \rightarrow \infty$ and thus, $\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right| / \lambda_{n} \geq R / \lambda_{n}$ for large $n$. Consequently, Lemma 6.8 yields the claim. The second case is a direct consequence of Lemma 6.8.

Now we can show the aforementioned smallness of the unbounded profiles.
Lemma 6.10 Let $\varepsilon>0$. For the energy of any unbounded profile $\left(V_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ in the decomposition Eq. (6.3) we have the bound

$$
\left\|V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \leq\left\|u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t_{0}-c}\right)}+\varepsilon
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
Remark 6.11 By Lemma 6.4 we see that the energy of the unbounded profiles can be assumed to be arbitrarily small provided $t_{0}$ and $c$ are chosen large enough.

Proof of Lemma 6.10 By Lemma 6.7 the claim holds trivially for those unbounded profiles $V_{i}$ where $\lambda_{n}^{i} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Furthermore, if the sequences $\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right)$ and $\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)$ satisfy the hypothesis of Corollary 6.9 , we infer

$$
\left\|V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3} \backslash B_{t_{0}-c}\right)}+o(1)
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$ and the claim follows by the orthogonality of the profiles stated in Lemma 6.5 and Remark 6.6.

It remains to study those profiles where $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|-\left(t_{0}-c\right)}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \lesssim 1$ and $\lambda_{n}^{i} \lesssim 1$. Since the profiles in question are unbounded, we must have $\lambda_{n}^{i} \rightarrow 0$. Consequently, $\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|$ is
bounded and after selecting a subsequence, we may assume that $t_{n}^{i} \rightarrow t^{i}$. Let $\varepsilon>0$ be given. Then we can find an $R>0$ such that

$$
\left\|V_{i}[0]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|V_{i}[0]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(B_{R}\right)}+\varepsilon
$$

i.e., the energy of $V_{i}[0]$ is essentially contained in $B_{R}$. Taking into account the fact that $V$ is a free wave, we infer by the strong Huygens' principle that the energy of $V$ at time $\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}$ (for large enough $n$ ) is essentially contained in

$$
\Omega_{n}:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}: \frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}-R \leq|x| \leq \frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}+R\right\},
$$

cf. Lemma 6.8. More precisely, we have

$$
\left\|V_{i}\left[\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|V_{i}\left[\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{i}}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\Omega_{n}\right)}+\varepsilon
$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$. By rescaling this is equivalent to

$$
\left\|V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}=\left\|V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\tilde{\Omega}_{n}\right)}+\varepsilon
$$

where $\tilde{\Omega}_{n}=\left\{x \in \mathbb{R}^{3}:\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right|-\lambda_{n}^{i} R \leq|x| \leq\left|t_{0}-t_{n}\right|+\lambda_{n}^{i} R\right\}$. Thus, as $n \rightarrow \infty$, $V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]$ concentrates at $r^{i}=\left|t_{0}-t^{i}\right|$. If $r^{i}<t_{0}-c$, we apply the argument from Lemma 6.7 to conclude that $V_{i}=0$ (the logic being that $V_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}\left[t_{0}\right]$ cannot concentrate inside of $B_{t_{0}-c}$ because there, $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]$ equals $\left.u_{c}\left[t_{0}\right]\right)$. If $r^{i} \geq t_{0}-c$, it follows from Lemma 6.4 and the orthogonality of Lemma 6.5, see also Remark 6.6, that the energy of the profile $V_{i}$ is small. In any case, we arrive at the desired conclusion.

An immediate consequence of Lemma 6.10 is the fact that the bulk of the energy of $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}\left[t_{0}\right]$ is concentrated on the bounded profile $V_{b}$ (in particular, $V_{b}$ is nonzero).

### 6.4 The nonlinear profile decomposition

After extracting a subsequence we have $\lambda_{n}^{b} \rightarrow \lambda^{b}, t_{n}^{b} \rightarrow t^{b}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ where $\lambda^{b}$ and $t^{b}$ are some finite numbers. Now we define new initial data by

$$
(f, g):=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} V_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{b}}\left[t_{0}\right]=V_{b}^{\lambda^{b}, t^{b}}\left[t_{0}\right]
$$

with convergence in $\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$. By the local existence theory [43] we obtain a time $t_{*}>t_{0}$ and an energy class solution $u_{*}$ satisfying

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\square u_{*}(t, x)+u_{*}(t, x)^{5}=0, \quad(t, x) \in\left(t_{0}, t_{*}\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{3}  \tag{6.7}\\
u_{*}\left[t_{0}\right]=(f, g)
\end{array}\right.
$$

where we assume $t_{*}$ to be maximal.
To each profile $\left(V_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ in the decomposition of Lemma 6.5 there is associated a nonlinear profile $\left(U_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ which is characterized by $\square U_{i}+U_{i}^{5}=0$ and either

$$
\left\|V_{i}[t]-U_{i}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \rightarrow 0 \text { as } t \rightarrow \pm \infty
$$

if $\frac{t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \rightarrow \pm \infty$ in the limit $n \rightarrow \infty$ or

$$
U_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]=V_{i}\left[t_{0}\right]
$$

in the case $\frac{\left|t_{0}-t_{n}^{i}\right|}{\lambda_{n}^{i}} \lesssim 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The existence of the nonlinear profiles is a consequence of the small data scattering theory [37], cf. also [21]. Moreover, since the energy of all unbounded profiles $V_{i}$ is small, it follows that the $U_{i}$ exist globally (and scatter) provided $i \neq b$ and by a continuity argument as in the proof of Lemma 6.4 we may assume $\left\|U_{i}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ to be small for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$. In the case of $U_{b}$ we have at least existence for small times. By the symmetries of the equation we see that, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}, U_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{b}}$ is a solution with data $U_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{b}}\left[t_{0}\right]=V_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{b}}\left[t_{0}\right]$ and thus, by the local well-posedness we infer

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|U_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{b}, t_{n}^{b}}[t]-u_{*}[t]\right\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \rightarrow 0 \quad(n \rightarrow \infty) \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{*}\right)$. Now we want to compare the solution $u_{*}$ with $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}$. The following lemma yields a representation of the nonlinear evolution of the decomposition Eq. (6.3).

Lemma 6.12 Let $t_{1} \in\left[t_{0}, t_{*}\right)$. Then there exists an $n_{0} \in \mathbb{N}$ such that, for all $n \geq n_{0}$, the nonlinear profiles $U_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}$ associated to the decomposition in Lemma 6.5 exist on $\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{3}$ and

$$
u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, x)=\sum_{i=1}^{A} U_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}(t, x)+W^{n A}(t, x)+R^{n A}(t, x)
$$

for all $A \in \mathbb{N}$ and $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right]$ where $W^{n A}$ is the free wave from Lemma 6.5. Furthermore, the error $R^{n A}$ satisfies

$$
\lim _{A \rightarrow \infty} \limsup _{n \rightarrow \infty}\left\|R^{n A}[\cdot]\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right]\right)} \dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)=0 .
$$

Proof This is (the second part of) the main theorem in [1]. Note that in [1] the result is actually proved for the defocusing critical wave equation. However, once the existence
of the nonlinear profiles $U_{i}$ is established, one checks that the argument in Section IV of [1] is in fact insensitive to the sign of the nonlinearity. As already mentioned, the $U_{i}$ for $i \neq b$ exist globally and scatter since the energy of the corresponding $V_{i}$ is small (in fact, arbitrarily small if we choose $t_{0}$ and $c$ large enough). In the case of $U_{b}$ it follows from Eq. (6.8) that we may assume the existence of $U_{b}^{\lambda_{n}^{h}, t_{n}^{b}}$ on $\left[t_{0}, t_{1}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{3}$ provided $n$ is sufficiently large.

The final step in the construction consists of showing that $u_{*}=u_{c}$ on $\left(K_{t_{0}, c}^{t_{*}}\right)^{\circ}$. In particular, we thereby obtain that $u_{*}$ can be extended beyond time $t_{*}$ and thus extends globally.
Lemma 6.13 The solution $u_{*}$ extends to all of $\left[t_{0}, \infty\right) \times \mathbb{R}^{3}$ and satisfies

$$
u_{*}=u_{c} \text { on } K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty}
$$

Proof Let $t \in\left[t_{0}, t_{*}\right)$ and choose $n$ so large that Lemma 6.12 applies. For $N \in \mathbb{N}$ denote by $P_{<N}$ the Littlewood-Paley projector to frequencies $\left\{\xi \in \mathbb{R}^{3}:|\xi| \leq N\right\}$. Given $\varepsilon>0$ we choose $N$ so large that

$$
\left\|u_{*}(t, \cdot)-P_{<N} u_{*}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(B_{t-c}\right)}<\varepsilon .
$$

Consider the decomposition in Lemma 6.12. For an unbounded profile $\left(U_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ with $\lambda_{n}^{i} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ we clearly have $\left\|P_{<N} U_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(B_{t-c}\right)} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Furthermore, for a profile $\left(U_{i},\left(\lambda_{n}^{i}\right),\left(t_{n}^{i}\right)\right)$ with $\lambda_{n}^{i} \rightarrow \infty$ we obtain $\left\|U_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(B_{t-c}\right)} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Finally, if $\lambda_{n}^{i} \simeq 1$ and $\left|t_{n}^{i}\right| \rightarrow \infty$ we infer $\left\|U_{i}^{\lambda_{n}^{i}, t_{n}^{i}}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(B_{t-c}\right)} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ by the small data scattering theory and Huygens' principle (recall that the $\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ norm of all unbounded profiles is small). By choosing $A$ sufficiently large we can also achieve

$$
\left\|W^{n A}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}+\left\|R^{n A}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}<\varepsilon
$$

by Lemma 6.12. These estimates and the decomposition from Lemma 6.12 imply

$$
\left\|u_{*}(t, \cdot)-u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}(t, \cdot)\right\|_{L^{6}\left(B_{t-c}\right)} \lesssim \varepsilon
$$

provided $n$ is chosen large enough. Since $\varepsilon>0$ was arbitrary and $u^{\left(T_{n}\right)}=u_{c}$ on $K_{t_{0}, c}^{t}$ by Lemma 6.4, we obtain $u_{*}=u_{c}$ on $K_{t_{0}, c}^{t}$. Furthermore, the solution can be continued since outside of $K_{t_{0}, c}^{t}$ the kinetic energy stays small for all times by a continuity argument as in the proof of Lemma 6.4 and inside of $K_{t_{0}, c}^{t}$ the solution $u_{*}$ equals $u_{c}$ which exists on $K_{t_{0}, c}^{\infty}$.

## References

1. Bahouri, H., Gérard, P.: High frequency approximation of solutions to critical nonlinear wave equations. Am. J. Math. 121(1), 131-175 (1999)
2. Bahouri, H., Shatah, J.: Decay estimates for the critical semilinear wave equation. Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Anal. Non Linéaire 15(6), 783-789 (1998)
3. Bergh, J., Löfström, J.: Interpolation spaces. An introduction. Springer, Berlin (1976, Grundlehren der Mathematischen Wissenschaften, No. 223)
4. Piotr, B., Tadeusz, C., Zbisław, T.: On blowup for semilinear wave equations with a focusing nonlinearity. Nonlinearity 17(6), 2187-2201 (2004)
5. Deift, P., Trubowitz, E.: Inverse scattering on the line. Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 32(2), 121-251 (1979)
6. Donninger, R., Schörkhuber, B.: Stable blow up dynamics for energy supercritical wave equations. Preprint arXiv: 1207.7046 (2012)
7. Donninger, R., Schörkhuber, B.: Stable self-similar blow up for energy subcritical wave equations. Dyn. Partial Diff. Equ. 9(1), 63-87 (2012)
8. Dunford, N., Schwartz, J.T.: Linear operators. Spectral theory. Self adjoint operators in Hilbert space, Part II. With the assistance of William G. Bade and Robert G. Bartle. Wiley, New York (1963)
9. Duyckaerts, T., Kenig, C., Merle, F.: Universality of the blow-up profile for small type II blow-up solutions of energy-critical wave equation: the non-radial case. Preprint arXiv:1003.0625 (2010)
10. Duyckaerts, T., Kenig, C., Merle, F.: Universality of blow-up profile for small radial type II blow-up solutions of the energy-critical wave equation. J. Eur. Math. Soc. (JEMS) 13(3), 533-599 (2011)
11. Duyckaerts, T., Kenig, C., Merle, F.: Classification of radial solutions of the focusing, energy-critical wave equation. Preprint arXiv:1204.0031 (2012)
12. Duyckaerts, T., Kenig, C., Merle, F.: Profiles of bounded radial solutions of the focusing, energy-critical wave equation. Geom. Funct. Anal. (2012, to appear)
13. Duyckaerts, T., Merle, F.: Dynamics of threshold solutions for energy-critical wave equation. Int. Math. Res. Pap. IMRP, pages Art ID rpn002, 67, (2008)
14. Gesztesy, F., Maxim, Z.: On spectral theory for Schrödinger operators with strongly singular potentials. Math. Nachr. 279(9-10), 1041-1082 (2006)
15. Gidas, B., Spruck, J.: Global and local behavior of positive solutions of nonlinear elliptic equations. Comm. Pure Appl. Math. 34(4), 525-598 (1981)
16. Ginibre, J., Soffer, A., Velo, G.: The global Cauchy problem for the critical nonlinear wave equation. J. Funct. Anal. 110(1), 96-130 (1992)
17. Grillakis, M.G.: Regularity and asymptotic behaviour of the wave equation with a critical nonlinearity. Ann. Math. (2) 132(3), 485-509 (1990)
18. Hillairet, M., Raphaël, P.: Smooth type II blow up solutions to the four dimensional energy critical wave equation. Preprint arXiv:1010.1768 (2010)
19. Johnson, R.A., Bin, P.X., Yingfei, Y.: Positive solutions of super-critical elliptic equations and asymptotics. Comm. Partial Diff. Equ. 18(5-6), 977-1019 (1993)
20. Lev, K.: Global and unique weak solutions of nonlinear wave equations. Math. Res. Lett. 1(2), 211-223 (1994)
21. Kenig, C.E., Merle, F.: Global well-posedness, scattering and blow-up for the energy-critical focusing non-linear wave equation. Acta Math. 201(2), 147-212 (2008)
22. Krieger, J., Schlag, W.: On the focusing critical semi-linear wave equation. Am. J. Math. 129(3), 843-913 (2007)
23. Krieger, J., Schlag, W., Tataru, D.: Renormalization and blow up for charge one equivariant critical wave maps. Invent. Math. 171(3), 543-615 (2008)
24. Krieger, J., Schlag, W., Tataru, D.: Renormalization and blow up for the critical Yang-Mills problem. Adv. Math. 221(5), 1445-1521 (2009)
25. Krieger, J., Nakanishi, K., Schlag, W.: Global dynamics away from the ground state for the energycritical nonlinear wave equation. Preprint arXiv:1010.3799 (2010)
26. Krieger, J., Nakanishi, K., Schlag, W.: Global dynamics of the nonradial energy-critical wave equation above the ground state energy. Preprint arXiv:1112.5663 (2011)
27. Krieger, J., Schlag, W., Tataru, D.: Slow blow-up solutions for the $H^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)$ critical focusing semilinear wave equation. Duke Math. J. 147(1), 1-53 (2009)
28. Levine, H.A.: Instability and nonexistence of global solutions to nonlinear wave equations of the form $P u_{t t}=-A u+\mathcal{F}(u)$. Trans. Am. Math. Soc. 192, 1-21 (1974)
29. Lindblad, H., Sogge, C.D.: On existence and scattering with minimal regularity for semilinear wave equations. J. Funct. Anal. 130(2), 357-426 (1995)
30. Merle, F., Raphael, P.: On universality of blow-up profile for $L^{2}$ critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Invent. Math. 156(3), 565-672 (2004)
31. Merle, F., Raphael, P.: The blow-up dynamic and upper bound on the blow-up rate for critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Ann. Math. (2) 161(1):157-222 (2005)
32. Merle, F., Raphael, P.: On a sharp lower bound on the blow-up rate for the $L^{2}$ critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation. J. Am. Math. Soc. 19(1):37-90 (2006, electronic)
33. Merle, F., Zaag, H.: Determination of the blow-up rate for the semilinear wave equation. Am. J. Math. 125(5), 1147-1164 (2003)
34. Frank, M., Zaag, H.: Determination of the blow-up rate for a critical semilinear wave equation. Math. Ann. 331(2), 395-416 (2005)
35. Olver, F.W.J.: Asymptotics and special functions. Computer Science and Applied Mathematics. Academic Press [A subsidiary of Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, Publishers], New York (1974)
36. Olver, F.W.J., Lozier, D.W., Boisvert, R.F., Clark, C.W. (eds.): NIST handbook of mathematical functions. U.S. Department of Commerce National Institute of Standards and Technology, Washington, DC: With 1 CD-ROM. Windows, Macintosh and UNIX (2010)
37. Pecher, H.: Nonlinear small data scattering for the wave and Klein-Gordon equation. Math. Z. 185(2), 261-270 (1984)
38. Perelman, G.: On the formation of singularities in solutions of the critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation. Ann. Henri Poincaré 2(4), 605-673 (2001)
39. Rauch, J.: I. The $u^{5}$ Klein-Gordon equation. II. Anomalous singularities for semilinear wave equations. In: Nonlinear partial differential equations and their applications. Collège de France Seminar, vol. I (Paris, 1978/1979). Res. Notes in Math., vol. 53, pp. 335-364. Pitman, Boston (1981)
40. Shatah, J., Struwe, M.: Regularity results for nonlinear wave equations. Ann. Math. (2) 138(3), 503-518 (1993)
41. Shatah, J., Struwe, M.: Well-posedness in the energy space for semilinear wave equations with critical growth. Int. Math. Res. Notices (7):303ff (1994, electronic)
42. Soffer, A.: Soliton dynamics and scattering. In: International Congress of Mathematicians, vol. III, pp. 459-471. Eur. Math. Soc., Zürich (2006)
43. Sogge, C.D.: Lectures on non-linear wave equations, 2nd edn. International Press, Boston (2008)
44. Struwe, M.: Globally regular solutions to the $u^{5}$ Klein-Gordon equation. Ann. Scuola Norm. Sup. Pisa Cl. Sci. (4) 15(3), 495-513 $(1989,1988)$
45. Szpak, N.: Relaxation to intermediate attractors in nonlinear wave equations. Theor. Math. Phys. 127, 817-826 (2001). doi:10.1023/A:1010460004007
46. Terence, T.: On the asymptotic behavior of large radial data for a focusing non-linear Schrödinger equation. Dyn. Partial Diff. Equ. 1(1), 1-48 (2004)
47. Terence, T.: Spacetime bounds for the energy-critical nonlinear wave equation in three spatial dimensions. Dyn. Partial Diff. Equ. 3(2), 93-110 (2006)
48. Taylor, M.E.: Tools for PDE. Mathematical Surveys and Monographs, vol. 81. Pseudodifferential operators, paradifferential operators, and layer potentials. American Mathematical Society, Providence (2000)
49. Teschl, G.: Mathematical methods in quantum mechanics. Graduate Studies in Mathematics, vol. 99. American Mathematical Society, Providence (2009) (With applications to Schrödinger operators)
50. Weidmann, J.: Lineare Operatoren in Hilberträumen. Teil II. Mathematische Leitfäden. [Mathematical Textbooks]. B. G. Teubner, Stuttgart (2003). Anwendungen. [Applications]

[^0]:    The authors would like to thank T. Duyckaerts for suggesting this problem.
    R. Donninger • J. Krieger ( $\boxtimes$ )

    Department of Mathematics, École Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne, Station 8, 1015 Lausanne, Switzerland
    e-mail: joachim.krieger@epfl.ch
    R. Donninger
    e-mail: roland.donninger@epfl.ch

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ The existence of ground state solitons, i.e., positive static solutions with finite energy such as $W$ requires $p=5$ in spatial dimension 3, cf. $[15,19]$.
    2 A type II blowup solution stays bounded in the energy space. The solutions constructed in [27] are of this type.

[^2]:    ${ }^{3}$ We use this convention for "historical" reasons, cf. [27].

[^3]:    ${ }^{4}$ In fact, we have to work with a vector-valued function $x$ since $\mathcal{L}$ has a negative eigenvalue. This is not essential for the argument but complicates the notation. Thus, for the moment we ignore this issue.

[^4]:    ${ }^{5}$ In other words, $M_{\mathrm{id}} f(\xi)=\xi f(\xi)$.

[^5]:    ${ }^{6}$ Here and in the following we employ the convenient abbreviation $u[t]=\left(u(t, \cdot), \partial_{t} u(t, \cdot)\right)$.

[^6]:    ${ }^{7}$ A "free wave" is a function $v: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{3} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that the map $t \mapsto\|v[t]\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)}$ is continuous (in particular, $\|v[t]\|_{\dot{H}^{1} \times L^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{3}\right)} \lesssim 1$ for any $\left.t \in \mathbb{R}\right)$ and $v(t, \cdot)=\cos (t|\nabla|) v(0, \cdot)+|\nabla|^{-1} \sin (t|\nabla|) \partial_{1} v(0, \cdot)$, i.e., $\square v=0$ in the weak sense.

